

King Solomon Baptist Church Roof Replacement (Phase 1)

6125 Fourteenth Street
Detroit, Michigan 48208

Issue for Final Construction Documents **Specifications**

May 27, 2022
QEA No.42134130



**QUINN
EVANS**

This [King Solomon Baptist Church Roof Replacement (Phase 1)] material was produced with assistance from the African American Civil Rights Grant Program, administered by the National Park Service, Department of the Interior. Any opinions, findings, and conclusions or recommendations expressed in this material are those of the author(s) and do not necessarily reflect the views of the Department of the Interior.

This project is supported through an African American Civil Rights grant, provided (in part or in whole) by the Historic Preservation Fund, as administered by the National Park Service, Department of Interior.

The views and conclusions contained in this document are those of the authors and should not be interpreted as representing the opinions or policies of the U.S. Government. Mention of trade names or commercial policies does not constitute their endorsement by the U.S. Government.

Division	Section Title	Pages
SPECIFICATIONS GROUP		
<i>General Requirements Subgroup</i>		
DIVISION 01	- GENERAL REQUIREMENTS	
011000	SUMMARY	4
012100	ALLOWANCES	3
012200	UNIT PRICES	2
012500	SUBSTITUTION PROCEDURES	3
012600	CONTRACT MODIFICATION PROCEDURES	3
012900	PAYMENT PROCEDURES	5
013100	PROJECT MANAGEMENT AND COORDINATION	7
013200	CONSTRUCTION PROGRESS DOCUMENTATION	5
013300	SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES	7
013591	HISTORIC TREATMENT PROCEDURES	8
014200	REFERENCES	4
015000	TEMPORARY FACILITIES AND CONTROLS	6
016000	PRODUCT REQUIREMENTS	5
017300	EXECUTION	6
017419	CONSTRUCTION WASTE MANAGEMENT AND DISPOSAL	3
017700	CLOSEOUT PROCEDURES	4
017839	PROJECT RECORD DOCUMENTS	2
<i>Facility Construction Subgroup</i>		
DIVISION 02	- EXISTING CONDITIONS	
024119	SELECTIVE DEMOLITION	5
DIVISION 04	- MASONRY	
040322	HISTORIC BRICK UNIT MASONRY REPAIR	10
040323	HISTORIC BRICK UNIT MASONRY REPOINTING	7
040342	HISTORIC STONE MASONRY REPAIR	11

040343	HISTORIC STONE MASONRY REPOINTING	7
047200	CAST STONE MASONRY	6
DIVISION 06 - WOOD, PLASTICS, AND COMPOSITES		
061000	ROUGH CARPENTRY	18
061600	SHEATHING	5
061753	SHOP-FABRICATED WOOD TRUSSES	9
064013	EXTERIOR ARCHITECTURAL WOODWORK	5
DIVISION 07 - THERMAL AND MOISTURE PROTECTION		
073113	ASPHALT SHINGLES	8
075323	ETHYLENE-PROPYLENE-DIENE-MONOMER (EPDM) ROOFING	7
076200	SHEET METAL FLASHING AND TRIM	10
079200	JOINT SEALANTS	6
DIVISION 09 - FINISHES		
099114	EXTERIOR PAINTING (MPI STANDARDS)	4

END OF TABLE OF CONTENTS

SECTION 011000 - SUMMARY

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Project information.
2. Work covered by Contract Documents.
3. Contractor's use of site and premises.
4. Work restrictions.
5. Specification and Drawing conventions.
6. Miscellaneous provisions.

- B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 015000 "Temporary Facilities and Controls" for limitations and procedures governing temporary use of Owner's facilities.
2. Section 017300 "Execution" for coordination of Owner-installed products.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Work Package: A group of specifications, drawings, and schedules prepared by the design team to describe a portion of the Project Work for pricing, permitting, and construction.

1.4 PROJECT INFORMATION

- A. Project Identification: 42134130.

1. Project Location: 6125 Fourteenth Street, Detroit, Michigan, 48208, United States.

- B. Owner: King Solomon Baptist Church, United States.

1. Owner's Representative: State Historic Preservation Office (SHPO).
 - a. SHPO's Representative: TBD

- C. Architect: Quinn Evans Architects - Detroit, 4219 Woodward Avenue, Suite 301, Detroit, Michigan, 48201.

1. Architect's Representative: Alexis Cecil.

- D. Architect's Consultants: Architect has retained the following design professionals, who have prepared designated portions of the Contract Documents:
 - 1. Structural Engineer : Resurget Engineering.
 - a. Structural Engineer's Representative: Marc Steinhobel .

1.5 WORK COVERED BY CONTRACT DOCUMENTS

- A. The Work of Project is defined by the Contract Documents and includes, but is not limited to, the following:
 - 1. Repair of portions of the existing roof areas, as indicated on the Drawings, by replacing the existing roofing in-kind and repairing or replacing deteriorated structural framing, brick and stone masonry repairs, as noted in the Contract Documents around portions of the Bell Tower, and other Work indicated in the Contract Documents.
 - 2. Work of Project is being supported (in whole or in part) through an AfricanAmerican Civil Rights grant from the Historic Preservation Fund administered by theNational Park Service, Department of the Interior.
 - 3. The structure is historic. Work will be done in keeping with the Secretary of the Interior's Standards and Guidelines for Historic Preservation and Archeology as defined by the National Historic Preservation Act.
- B. Type of Contract: Design-Bid-Build
 - 1. Project will be constructed under a single prime contract.

1.6 CONTRACTOR'S USE OF SITE AND PREMISES

- A. Restricted Use of Site: Each Contractor shall have limited use of Project site for construction operations as indicated on Drawings by the Contract limits and as indicated by requirements of this Section.
- B. Limits on Use of Site: Limit use of Project site to Work in areas indicated. Do not disturb portions of Project site beyond areas in which the Work is indicated.
 - 1. Walkways and Entrances: Keep entrances serving premises clear and available to Owner, Owner's employees, and emergency vehicles at all times. Do not use these areas for parking or for storage of materials.
 - a. Schedule deliveries to minimize use entrances by construction operations.
 - b. Schedule deliveries to minimize space and time requirements for storage of materials and equipment on-site.
- C. Condition of Existing Building: Maintain portions of existing building affected by construction operations in a weathertight condition throughout construction period. Repair damage caused by construction operations.
- D. Condition of Existing Grounds: Maintain portions of existing grounds, landscaping, and hardscaping affected by construction operations throughout construction period. Repair damage caused by construction operations.

1.7 WORK RESTRICTIONS

- A. Comply with restrictions on construction operations.
 - 1. Comply with limitations on use of public streets, work on public streets, rights of way, and other requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. On-Site Work Hours: Limit work to between 7:00 a.m. to 6:00 p.m., Monday through Friday, unless otherwise indicated. Work hours may be modified to meet Project requirements if approved by Owner and authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 1. Weekend Hours: Coordinate with Owner .
- C. Existing Utility Interruptions: Do not interrupt utilities serving facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging for temporary utility services according to requirements indicated:
 - 1. Notify Owner not less than two days in advance of proposed utility interruptions.
 - 2. Obtain Owner's written permission before proceeding with utility interruptions.
- D. Noise, Vibration, Dust, and Odors: Coordinate operations that may result in high levels of noise and vibration, dust, odors, or other disruption to Owner occupancy with Owner.
 - 1. Notify Owner not less than two days in advance of proposed disruptive operations.
 - 2. Obtain Owner's written permission before proceeding with disruptive operations.
 - 3. Observe historic structure and material response to any vibrations and report any resulting damage to the Owner/Architect for recommendations.
- E. Nonsmoking Building: Smoking is not permitted within the building or within 25 feet of entrances, operable windows, or outdoor-air intakes.
- F. Smoking and Controlled Substance Restrictions: Use of tobacco products , alcoholic beverages, and other controlled substances within the existing building is not permitted.

1.8 SPECIFICATION AND DRAWING CONVENTIONS

- A. Specification Content: The Specifications use certain conventions for the style of language and the intended meaning of certain terms, words, and phrases when used in particular situations. These conventions are as follows:
 - 1. Imperative mood and streamlined language are generally used in the Specifications. The words "shall," "shall be," or "shall comply with," depending on the context, are implied where a colon (:) is used within a sentence or phrase.
 - 2. Text Color: Text used in the Specifications, including units of measure, manufacturer and product names, and other text may appear in multiple colors or underlined as part of a hyperlink; no emphasis is implied by text with these characteristics.
 - 3. Hypertext: Text used in the Specifications may contain hyperlinks. Hyperlinks may allow for access to linked information that is not residing in the Specifications. Unless otherwise indicated, linked information is not part of the Contract Documents.
 - 4. Specification requirements are to be performed by Contractor unless specifically stated otherwise.

- B. Division 00 Contracting Requirements: General provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions, apply to all Sections of the Specifications.
- C. Division 01 General Requirements: Requirements of Sections in Division 01 apply to the Work of all Sections in the Specifications.
- D. Drawing Coordination: Requirements for materials and products identified on Drawings are described in detail in the Specifications. One or more of the following are used on Drawings to identify materials and products:
 - 1. Terminology: Materials and products are identified by the typical generic terms used in the individual Specifications Sections.
 - 2. Abbreviations: Materials and products are identified by abbreviations scheduled on Drawings .
 - 3. Keynoting: Materials and products are identified by reference keynotes referencing Specification Division numbers found in this Project Manual.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 011000

SECTION 012100 - ALLOWANCES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements governing allowances.
- B. Types of allowances include the following:
 - 1. Unit-cost allowances.
 - 2. Contingency allowances.
- C. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 012200 "Unit Prices" for procedures for using unit prices, including adjustment of quantity allowances when applicable.
 - 2. Section 012600 "Contract Modification Procedures" for procedures for submitting and handling Change Orders.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Allowance: A quantity of work or dollar amount included in the Contract, established in lieu of additional requirements, used to defer selection of actual materials and equipment to a later date when direction will be provided to Contractor. If necessary, additional requirements will be issued by Change Order.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordinate and process submittals for allowance items in same manner as for other portions of the Work.

1.5 UNIT-COST ALLOWANCES

- A. Allowance shall include cost to Contractor of specific products and materials ordered by Owner or selected by Architect under allowance and shall include taxes, freight, and delivery to Project site.
- B. Unless otherwise indicated, Contractor's costs for receiving and handling at Project site, labor, installation, overhead and profit, and similar costs related to products and materials ordered by

Owner or selected by Architect under allowance shall be included as part of the Contract Sum and not part of the allowance.

- C. Unused Materials: Return unused materials purchased under an allowance to manufacturer or supplier for credit to Owner, after installation has been completed and accepted.
 - 1. If requested by Architect, retain and prepare unused material for storage by Owner. Deliver unused material to Owner's storage space as directed.

1.6 CONTINGENCY ALLOWANCES

- A. Use the contingency allowance only as directed by Architect for Owner's purposes and only by Change Orders that indicate amounts to be charged to the allowance.
- B. Contractor's overhead, profit, and related costs for products and equipment ordered by Owner under the contingency allowance are included in the allowance and are not part of the Contract Sum. These costs include delivery, installation, taxes, insurance, equipment rental, and similar costs.
- C. Change Orders authorizing use of funds from the contingency allowance will include Contractor's related costs and reasonable overhead and profit.
- D. At Project closeout, credit unused amounts remaining in the contingency allowance to Owner by Change Order.

1.7 ADJUSTMENT OF ALLOWANCES

- A. Allowance Adjustment: To adjust allowance amounts, prepare a Change Order proposal based on the difference between purchase amount and the allowance, multiplied by final measurement of work-in-place where applicable. If applicable, include reasonable allowances for cutting losses, tolerances, mixing wastes, normal product imperfections, required maintenance materials, and similar margins.
 - 1. Include installation costs in purchase amount only where indicated as part of the allowance.
 - 2. If requested, prepare explanation and documentation to substantiate distribution of overhead costs and other markups.
 - 3. Submit substantiation of a change in scope of Work, if any, claimed in Change Orders related to unit-cost allowances.
 - 4. Owner reserves the right to establish the quantity of work-in-place by independent quantity survey, measure, or count.
- B. Submit claims for increased costs due to a change in the scope or nature of the allowance described in the Contract Documents, whether for the purchase order amount or Contractor's handling, labor, installation, overhead, and profit.
 - 1. Do not include Contractor's or subcontractor's indirect expense in the Change Order cost amount unless it is clearly shown that the nature or extent of Work has changed from what could have been foreseen from information in the Contract Documents.
 - 2. No change to Contractor's indirect expense is permitted for selection of higher- or lower-priced materials or systems of the same scope and nature as originally indicated.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine products covered by an allowance promptly on delivery for damage or defects. Return damaged or defective products to manufacturer for replacement.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Coordinate materials and their installation for each allowance with related materials and installations to ensure that each allowance item is completely integrated and interfaced with related work.

END OF SECTION 012100

SECTION 012200 - UNIT PRICES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for unit prices.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 012100 "Allowances" for procedures for using unit prices to adjust quantity allowances.
 - 2. Section 012600 "Contract Modification Procedures" for procedures for submitting and handling Change Orders.
 - 3. Section 014000 "Quality Requirements" for field testing by an independent testing agency.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Unit price is an amount incorporated into the Agreement, applicable during the duration of the Work as a price per unit of measurement for materials, equipment, or services, or a portion of the Work, added to or deducted from the Contract Sum by appropriate modification, if the scope of Work or estimated quantities of Work required by the Contract Documents are increased or decreased.

1.4 PROCEDURES

- A. Unit prices include all necessary material, plus cost for delivery, installation, insurance, applicable taxes, overhead, and profit.
- B. Measurement and Payment: See individual Specification Sections for work that requires establishment of unit prices. Methods of measurement and payment for unit prices are specified in those Sections.
- C. Owner reserves the right to reject Contractor's measurement of work-in-place that involves use of established unit prices and to have this work measured, at Owner's expense, by an independent surveyor acceptable to Contractor.
- D. List of Unit Prices: A schedule of unit prices is included in Part 3. Specification Sections referenced in the Part 3 "Schedule of Unit Prices" Article contain requirements for materials described under each unit price.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 SCHEDULE OF UNIT PRICES

A. Unit Price No. 1: Masonry Repointing.

1. Description: Removal of existing mortar, preparation of joints, and installation of new mortar joints to match existing, in accordance with Section 040323 "Historic Brick Unit Masonry Repointing," and Section 040343 "Historic Stone Masonry Repointing."
2. Unit of Measurement: Linear Foot (LF) of masonry joints.
3. Quantity Allowance: Coordinate unit price with allowance adjustment requirements in Section 012100 "Allowances."

B. Unit Price No. 2: Brick Masonry Reconstruction.

1. Description: Dismantle displaced or loose masonry, salvage sound units for reinstallation, replace broken units, and reset salvaged and new units in mortar with new ties, in accordance with Section 040322 "Historic Brick Unit Masonry Repair."
2. Unit of Measurement: Square Foot (SF) of brick masonry.
3. Quantity Allowance: Coordinate unit price with allowance adjustment requirements in Section 012100 "Allowances."

C. Unit Price No. 3: Brick Replacement.

1. Description: Remove broken or missing units and associated mortar, replace with bricks to match existing (in size, color, texture) in new mortar beds and joints to match existing, in accordance with Section 040322 "Historic Brick Unit Masonry Repair."
2. Unit of Measurement: Cubic Foot of brick masonry.
3. Quantity Allowance: Coordinate unit price with allowance adjustment requirements in Section 012100 "Allowances."

END OF SECTION 012200

SECTION 012500 - SUBSTITUTION PROCEDURES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for substitutions.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 012100 "Allowances" for products selected under an allowance.
 - 2. Section 016000 "Product Requirements" for requirements for submitting comparable product submittals for products by listed manufacturers.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Substitutions: Changes in products, materials, equipment, and methods of construction from those required by the Contract Documents.
 - 1. Substitutions for Cause: Changes proposed by Contractor that are required due to changed Project conditions, such as unavailability of product, regulatory changes, or unavailability of required warranty terms.
 - 2. Substitutions for Convenience: Changes proposed by Contractor or Owner that are not required to meet other Project requirements but may offer advantage to Contractor or Owner.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Substitution Requests: Submit documentation identifying product or fabrication or installation method to be replaced. Include Specification Section number and title and Drawing numbers and titles.
 - 1. Substitution Request Form: Use form acceptable to Architect.
 - 2. Documentation: Show compliance with requirements for substitutions and the following, as applicable:
 - a. Statement indicating why specified product or fabrication or installation method cannot be provided, if applicable.
 - b. Coordination of information, including a list of changes or revisions needed to other parts of the Work and to construction performed by Owner and separate contractors that will be necessary to accommodate proposed substitution.
 - c. Detailed comparison of significant qualities of proposed substitutions with those of the Work specified. Include annotated copy of applicable Specification Section.

Significant qualities may include attributes, such as performance, weight, size, durability, visual effect, sustainable design characteristics, warranties, and specific features and requirements indicated. Indicate deviations, if any, from the Work specified.

- d. Product Data, including drawings and descriptions of products and fabrication and installation procedures.
 - e. Samples, where applicable or requested.
 - f. Certificates and qualification data, where applicable or requested.
 - g. Detailed comparison of Contractor's construction schedule using proposed substitutions with products specified for the Work, including effect on the overall Contract Time.
 - h. Cost information, including a proposal of change, if any, in the Contract Sum.
 - i. Contractor's certification that proposed substitution complies with requirements in the Contract Documents, except as indicated in substitution request, is compatible with related materials and is appropriate for applications indicated, including The Secretary of Interior's Standards (where applicable).
 - j. Contractor's waiver of rights to additional payment or time that may subsequently become necessary because of failure of proposed substitution to produce indicated results.
3. Architect's Action: If necessary, Architect will request additional information or documentation for evaluation within seven days of receipt of a request for substitution. Architect will notify Contractor of acceptance or rejection of proposed substitution within 15 days of receipt of request, or seven days of receipt of additional information or documentation, whichever is later.
- a. Forms of Acceptance: Change Order, Construction Change Directive, or Architect's Supplemental Instructions for minor changes in the Work.
 - b. Use product specified if Architect does not issue a decision on use of a proposed substitution within time allocated.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Compatibility of Substitutions: Investigate and document compatibility of proposed substitution with related products and materials. Engage a qualified testing agency to perform compatibility tests recommended by manufacturers.

1.6 PROCEDURES

- A. Coordination: Revise or adjust affected work as necessary to integrate work of the approved substitutions.

1.7 SUBSTITUTIONS

- A. Substitutions for Cause: Submit requests for substitution immediately on discovery of need for change, but not later than days prior to time required for preparation and review of related submittals.

1. Conditions: Architect will consider Contractor's request for substitution when the following conditions are satisfied. If the following conditions are not satisfied, Architect will return requests without action, except to record noncompliance with these requirements:

- a. Requested substitution is consistent with the Contract Documents and will produce indicated results, including compliance with The Secretary of Interior's Standards (where applicable).
 - b. Substitution request is fully documented and properly submitted.
 - c. Requested substitution will not adversely affect Contractor's construction schedule.
 - d. Requested substitution has received necessary approvals of authorities having jurisdiction.
 - e. Requested substitution is compatible with other portions of the Work.
 - f. Requested substitution has been coordinated with other portions of the Work.
 - g. Requested substitution provides specified warranty.
 - h. If requested substitution involves more than one contractor, requested substitution has been coordinated with other portions of the Work, is uniform and consistent, is compatible with other products, and is acceptable to all contractors involved.
- B. Substitutions for Convenience: Architect will consider requests for substitution if received within 60 days after the Notice of Award. Requests received after that time may be considered or rejected at discretion of Architect.
1. Conditions: Architect will consider Contractor's request for substitution when the following conditions are satisfied. If the following conditions are not satisfied, Architect will return requests without action, except to record noncompliance with these requirements:
 - a. Requested substitution offers Owner a substantial advantage in cost, time, energy conservation, or other considerations, after deducting additional responsibilities Owner must assume. Owner's additional responsibilities may include compensation to Architect for redesign and evaluation services, increased cost of other construction by Owner, and similar considerations.
 - b. Requested substitution does not require extensive revisions to the Contract Documents.
 - c. Requested substitution is consistent with the Contract Documents and will produce indicated results.
 - d. Substitution request is fully documented and properly submitted.
 - e. Requested substitution will not adversely affect Contractor's construction schedule.
 - f. Requested substitution has received necessary approvals of authorities having jurisdiction.
 - g. Requested substitution is compatible with other portions of the Work.
 - h. Requested substitution has been coordinated with other portions of the Work.
 - i. Requested substitution provides specified warranty.
 - j. If requested substitution involves more than one contractor, requested substitution has been coordinated with other portions of the Work, is uniform and consistent, is compatible with other products, and is acceptable to all contractors involved.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 012500

SECTION 012600 - CONTRACT MODIFICATION PROCEDURES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for handling and processing Contract modifications.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 012500 "Substitution Procedures" for administrative procedures for handling requests for substitutions made after the Contract award.
 - 2. Section 013100 "Project Management and Coordination" for requirements for forms for contract modifications provided as part of web-based Project management software.

1.3 MINOR CHANGES IN THE WORK

- A. Architect will issue supplemental instructions authorizing minor changes in the Work, not involving adjustment to the Contract Sum or the Contract Time, on AIA Document G710 .

1.4 PROPOSAL REQUESTS

- A. Owner-Initiated Proposal Requests: will issue a detailed description of proposed changes in the Work that may require adjustment to the Contract Sum or the Contract Time. If necessary, the description will include supplemental or revised Drawings and Specifications.
 - 1. Work Change Proposal Requests issued by Architect are not instructions either to stop work in progress or to execute the proposed change.
 - 2. Within time specified in Proposal Request or 20 days, when not otherwise specified, after receipt of Proposal Request, submit a quotation estimating cost adjustments to the Contract Sum and the Contract Time necessary to execute the change.
 - a. Include a list of quantities of products required or eliminated and unit costs, with total amount of purchases and credits to be made. If requested, furnish survey data to substantiate quantities.
 - b. Indicate applicable taxes, delivery charges, equipment rental, and amounts of trade discounts.
 - c. Include costs of labor and supervision directly attributable to the change.
 - d. Include an updated Contractor's construction schedule that indicates the effect of the change, including, but not limited to, changes in activity duration, start and finish times, and activity relationship. Use available total float before requesting an extension of the Contract Time.

- e. Quotation Form: Use forms acceptable to Architect .
- B. Contractor-Initiated Proposals: If latent or changed conditions require modifications to the Contract, Contractor may initiate a claim by submitting a request for a change to Architect .
 - 1. Include a statement outlining reasons for the change and the effect of the change on the Work. Provide a complete description of the proposed change. Indicate the effect of the proposed change on the Contract Sum and the Contract Time.
 - 2. Include a list of quantities of products required or eliminated and unit costs, with total amount of purchases and credits to be made. If requested, furnish survey data to substantiate quantities.
 - 3. Indicate applicable taxes, delivery charges, equipment rental, and amounts of trade discounts.
 - 4. Include costs of labor and supervision directly attributable to the change.
 - 5. Include an updated Contractor's construction schedule that indicates the effect of the change, including, but not limited to, changes in activity duration, start and finish times, and activity relationship. Use available total float before requesting an extension of the Contract Time.
 - 6. Comply with requirements in Section 012500 "Substitution Procedures" if the proposed change requires substitution of one product or system for product or system specified.
 - 7. Proposal Request Form: Use form acceptable to Architect .

1.5 ADMINISTRATIVE CHANGE ORDERS

- A. Allowance Adjustment: See Section 012100 "Allowances" for administrative procedures for preparation of Change Order Proposal for adjusting the Contract Sum to reflect actual costs of allowances.
- B. Unit-Price Adjustment: See Section 012200 "Unit Prices" for administrative procedures for preparation of Change Order Proposal for adjusting the Contract Sum to reflect measured scope of unit-price work.

1.6 CHANGE ORDER PROCEDURES

- A. On Owner's approval of a Work Change Proposal Request, Architect will issue a Change Order for signatures of Owner and Contractor on AIA Document G701 .

1.7 CONSTRUCTION CHANGE DIRECTIVE

- A. Construction Change Directive: Architect may issue a Construction Change Directive on AIA Document G714 . Construction Change Directive instructs Contractor to proceed with a change in the Work, for subsequent inclusion in a Change Order.
 - 1. Construction Change Directive contains a complete description of change in the Work. It also designates method to be followed to determine change in the Contract Sum or the Contract Time.
- B. Documentation: Maintain detailed records on a time and material basis of work required by the Construction Change Directive.

1. After completion of change, submit an itemized account and supporting data necessary to substantiate cost and time adjustments to the Contract.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 012600

SECTION 012900 - PAYMENT PROCEDURES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements necessary to prepare and process Applications for Payment.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 012100 "Allowances" for procedural requirements governing the handling and processing of allowances.
 - 2. Section 012200 "Unit Prices" for administrative requirements governing the use of unit prices.
 - 3. Section 012600 "Contract Modification Procedures" for administrative procedures for handling changes to the Contract.
 - 4. Section 013200 "Construction Progress Documentation" for administrative requirements governing the preparation and submittal of the Contractor's construction schedule.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Schedule of Values: A statement furnished by Contractor allocating portions of the Contract Sum to various portions of the Work and used as the basis for reviewing Contractor's Applications for Payment.

1.4 SCHEDULE OF VALUES

- A. Format and Content: Use Project Manual table of contents as a guide to establish line items for the schedule of values. Provide at least one line item for each Specification Section.
 - 1. Identification: Include the following Project identification on the schedule of values:
 - a. Project name and location.
 - b. Owner's name.
 - c. Owner's Project number.
 - d. Name of Architect.
 - e. Architect's Project number.
 - f. Contractor's name and address.
 - g. Date of submittal.
 - 2. Arrange schedule of values consistent with format of AIA Document G703 .
 - 3. Arrange the schedule of values in tabular form, with separate columns to indicate the following for each item listed:

- a. Related Specification Section or division.
 - b. Description of the Work.
 - c. Name of subcontractor.
 - d. Name of manufacturer or fabricator.
 - e. Name of supplier.
 - f. Change Orders (numbers) that affect value.
 - g. Dollar value of the following, as a percentage of the Contract Sum to nearest one-hundredth percent, adjusted to total 100 percent. Round dollar amounts to whole dollars, with total equal to Contract Sum.
 - 1) Labor.
 - 2) Materials.
 - 3) Equipment.
4. Provide a breakdown of the Contract Sum in enough detail to facilitate continued evaluation of Applications for Payment and progress reports. Provide multiple line items for principal subcontract amounts in excess of five percent of the Contract Sum.
 5. Provide a separate line item in the schedule of values for each part of the Work where Applications for Payment may include materials or equipment purchased or fabricated and stored, but not yet installed.
 - a. Differentiate between items stored on-site and items stored off-site.
 6. Allowances: Provide a separate line item in the schedule of values for each allowance. Show line-item value of unit-cost allowances, as a product of the unit cost, multiplied by measured quantity. Use information indicated in the Contract Documents to determine quantities.
 7. Overhead Costs, Separate Line Items: Show cost of temporary facilities and other major cost items that are not direct cost of actual work-in-place as separate line items.
 8. Temporary Facilities: Show cost of temporary facilities and other major cost items that are not direct cost of actual work-in-place as separate line items.
 9. Closeout Costs. Include separate line items under Contractor and principal subcontracts for Project closeout requirements in an amount totaling five percent of the Contract Sum and subcontract amount.
 10. Schedule of Values Revisions: Revise the schedule of values when Change Orders or Construction Change Directives result in a change in the Contract Sum. Include at least one separate line item for each Change Order and Construction Change Directive.

1.5 APPLICATIONS FOR PAYMENT

- A. Each Application for Payment following the initial Application for Payment shall be consistent with previous applications and payments, as certified by Architect and paid for by Owner.
- B. Payment Application Times: The date for each progress payment is indicated in the Owner/Contractor Agreement. The period of construction work covered by each Application for Payment is the period indicated in the Agreement.
- C. Payment Application Times: Submit Application for Payment to Architect by the 15th day of the month. The period covered by each Application for Payment is one month, ending on the last day of the month .
 1. Submit draft copy of Application for Payment seven days prior to due date for review by Architect.
- D. Application for Payment Forms: Use AIA Document G702 and AIA Document G703 as form for Applications for Payment.

- E. Application Preparation:
1. Entries shall match data on the schedule of values and Contractor's construction schedule. Use updated schedules if revisions were made.
 2. Include amounts for work completed following previous Application for Payment, whether or not payment has been received. Include only amounts for work completed at time of Application for Payment.
 3. Include amounts of Change Orders and Construction Change Directives issued before last day of construction period covered by application.
 4. Indicate separate amounts for work being carried out under Owner-requested project acceleration.
- F. Stored Materials: Include in Application for Payment amounts applied for materials or equipment purchased or fabricated and stored, but not yet installed. Differentiate between items stored on-site and items stored off-site.
1. Provide certificate of insurance, evidence of transfer of title to Owner, and consent of surety to payment for stored materials.
 2. Provide supporting documentation that verifies amount requested, such as paid invoices. Match amount requested with amounts indicated on documentation; do not include overhead and profit on stored materials.
 3. Provide summary documentation for stored materials indicating the following:
 - a. Value of materials previously stored and remaining stored as of date of previous Applications for Payment.
 - b. Value of previously stored materials put in place after date of previous Application for Payment and on or before date of current Application for Payment.
 - c. Value of materials stored since date of previous Application for Payment and remaining stored as of date of current Application for Payment.
- G. Transmittal: Submit **three** signed and notarized **original** copies of each Application for Payment to Architect by a method ensuring receipt within 24 hours. One copy shall include waivers of lien and similar attachments if required.
1. Transmit each copy with a transmittal form listing attachments and recording appropriate information about application.
- H. Waivers of Mechanic's Lien: With each Application for Payment, submit waivers of mechanic's lien from subcontractors, sub-subcontractors, and suppliers for construction period covered by the previous application.
1. Submit partial waivers on each item for amount requested in previous application, after deduction for retainage, on each item.
 2. When an application shows completion of an item, submit conditional final or full waivers.
 3. Owner reserves the right to designate which entities involved in the Work must submit waivers.
 4. Submit final Application for Payment with or preceded by conditional final waivers from every entity involved with performance of the Work covered by the application who is lawfully entitled to a lien.
 5. Waiver Forms: Submit executed waivers of lien on forms acceptable to Owner.
- I. Initial Application for Payment: Administrative actions and submittals that must precede or coincide with submittal of first Application for Payment include the following:
1. List of subcontractors.

2. Schedule of values.
 3. Contractor's construction schedule (preliminary if not final).
 4. Products list (preliminary if not final).
 5. Sustainable design action plans, including preliminary project materials cost data.
 6. Schedule of unit prices.
 7. Submittal schedule (preliminary if not final).
 8. List of Contractor's staff assignments.
 9. List of Contractor's principal consultants.
 10. Copies of building permits.
 11. Copies of authorizations and licenses from authorities having jurisdiction for performance of the Work.
 12. Initial progress report.
 13. Report of preconstruction conference.
 14. Certificates of insurance and insurance policies.
 15. Performance and payment bonds.
 16. Data needed to acquire Owner's insurance.
- J. Application for Payment at Substantial Completion: After Architect issues the Certificate of Substantial Completion, submit an Application for Payment showing 100 percent completion for portion of the Work claimed as substantially complete.
1. Include documentation supporting claim that the Work is substantially complete and a statement showing an accounting of changes to the Contract Sum.
 - a. Complete administrative actions, submittals, and Work preceding this application, as described in Section 017700 "Closeout Procedures."
 2. This application shall reflect Certificate(s) of Substantial Completion issued previously for Owner occupancy of designated portions of the Work.
- K. Final Payment Application: After completing Project closeout requirements, submit final Application for Payment with releases and supporting documentation not previously submitted and accepted, including, but not limited, to the following:
1. Evidence of completion of Project closeout requirements.
 2. Certification of completion of final punch list items.
 3. Insurance certificates for products and completed operations where required and proof that taxes, fees, and similar obligations were paid.
 4. Updated final statement, accounting for final changes to the Contract Sum.
 5. AIA Document G706.
 6. AIA Document G706A.
 7. AIA Document G707.
 8. Evidence that claims have been settled.
 9. Final meter readings for utilities, a measured record of stored fuel, and similar data as of date of Substantial Completion or when Owner took possession of and assumed responsibility for corresponding elements of the Work.
 10. Final liquidated damages settlement statement.
 11. Proof that taxes, fees, and similar obligations are paid.
 12. Waivers and releases.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 012900

SECTION 013100 - PROJECT MANAGEMENT AND COORDINATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative provisions for coordinating construction operations on Project, including, but not limited to, the following:
 - 1. General coordination procedures.
 - 2. RFIs.
 - 3. Digital project management procedures.
 - 4. Project meetings.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 013200 "Construction Progress Documentation" for preparing and submitting Contractor's construction schedule.
 - 2. Section 017300 "Execution" for procedures for coordinating general installation and field-engineering services, including establishment of benchmarks and control points.
 - 3. Section 017700 "Closeout Procedures" for coordinating closeout of the Contract.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. BIM: Building Information Modeling.
- B. RFI: Request for Information. Request from Owner, Architect, or Contractor seeking information required by or clarifications of the Contract Documents.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Subcontract List: Prepare a written summary identifying individuals or firms proposed for each portion of the Work, including those who are to furnish products or equipment fabricated to a special design. Include the following information in tabular form:
 - 1. Name, address, telephone number, and email address of entity performing subcontract or supplying products.
 - 2. Number and title of related Specification Section(s) covered by subcontract.
 - 3. Drawing number and detail references, as appropriate, covered by subcontract.
- B. Key Personnel Names: Within 15 of Notice of Award, submit a list of key personnel assignments, including superintendent and other personnel in attendance at Project site.

Identify individuals and their duties and responsibilities; list addresses, cellular telephone numbers, and e-mail addresses. Provide names, addresses, and telephone numbers of individuals assigned as alternates in the absence of individuals assigned to Project.

1. Post copies of list in Project meeting room, in temporary field office, and in prominent location in built facility. Keep list current at all times.

1.5 GENERAL COORDINATION PROCEDURES

A. Coordination: Coordinate construction operations included in different Sections of the Specifications to ensure efficient and orderly installation of each part of the Work. Coordinate construction operations included in different Sections that depend on each other for proper installation, connection, and operation.

1. Schedule construction operations in sequence required to obtain the best results, where installation of one part of the Work depends on installation of other components, before or after its own installation.
2. Coordinate installation of different components to ensure maximum performance and accessibility for required maintenance, service, and repair.
3. Make adequate provisions to accommodate items scheduled for later installation.

B. Administrative Procedures: Coordinate scheduling and timing of required administrative procedures with other construction activities to avoid conflicts and to ensure orderly progress of the Work. Such administrative activities include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Preparation of Contractor's construction schedule.
2. Preparation of the schedule of values.
3. Installation and removal of temporary facilities and controls.
4. Delivery and processing of submittals.
5. Progress meetings.
6. Preinstallation conferences.
7. Project closeout activities.

1.6 REQUEST FOR INFORMATION (RFI)

A. General: Immediately on discovery of the need for additional information, clarification, or interpretation of the Contract Documents, Contractor shall prepare and submit an RFI in the form specified.

1. Architect will return without response those RFIs submitted to Architect by other entities controlled by Contractor.
2. Coordinate and submit RFIs in a prompt manner to avoid delays in Contractor's work or work of subcontractors.

B. Content of the RFI: Include a detailed, legible description of item needing information or interpretation and the following:

1. Project name.
2. Owner name.
3. Owner's Project number.
4. Name of Architect.

5. Architect's Project number.
 6. Date.
 7. Name of Contractor.
 8. RFI number, numbered sequentially.
 9. RFI subject.
 10. Specification Section number and title and related paragraphs, as appropriate.
 11. Drawing number and detail references, as appropriate.
 12. Field dimensions and conditions, as appropriate.
 13. Contractor's suggested resolution. If Contractor's suggested resolution impacts the Contract Time or the Contract Sum, Contractor shall state impact in the RFI.
 14. Contractor's signature.
 15. Attachments: Include sketches, descriptions, measurements, photos, Product Data, Shop Drawings, coordination drawings, and other information necessary to fully describe items needing interpretation.
 - a. Include dimensions, thicknesses, structural grid references, and details of affected materials, assemblies, and attachments on attached sketches.
- C. RFI Forms: AIA Document G716 .
1. Attachments shall be electronic files in PDF format.
- D. Architect's Action: Architect will review each RFI, determine action required, and respond. Allow seven days for Architect's response for each RFI. RFIs received by Architect after 1:00 p.m. will be considered as received the following working day.
1. The following Contractor-generated RFIs will be returned without action:
 - a. Requests for approval of submittals.
 - b. Requests for approval of substitutions.
 - c. Requests for approval of Contractor's means and methods.
 - d. Requests for coordination information already indicated in the Contract Documents.
 - e. Requests for adjustments in the Contract Time or the Contract Sum.
 - f. Requests for interpretation of Architect's actions on submittals.
 - g. Incomplete RFIs or inaccurately prepared RFIs.
 2. Architect's action may include a request for additional information, in which case Architect's time for response will date from time of receipt by Architect of additional information.
 3. Architect's action on RFIs that may result in a change to the Contract Time or the Contract Sum may be eligible for Contractor to submit Change Proposal according to Section 012600 "Contract Modification Procedures."
 - a. If Contractor believes the RFI response warrants change in the Contract Time or the Contract Sum, notify Architect in writing within 5 days of receipt of the RFI response.
- E. RFI Log: Prepare, maintain, and submit a tabular log of RFIs organized by the RFI number. Submit log weekly . Include the following:
1. Project name.
 2. Name and address of Contractor.
 3. Name and address of Architect.
 4. RFI number, including RFIs that were returned without action or withdrawn.
 5. RFI description.
 6. Date the RFI was submitted.
 7. Date Architect's response was received.

8. Identification of related Minor Change in the Work, Construction Change Directive, and Proposal Request, as appropriate.
 9. Identification of related Field Order, Work Change Directive, and Proposal Request, as appropriate.
- F. On receipt of Architect's action, update the RFI log and immediately distribute the RFI response to affected parties. Review response and notify Architect within seven days if Contractor disagrees with response.

1.7 DIGITAL PROJECT MANAGEMENT PROCEDURES

- A. Use of Architect's Digital Data Files: Digital data files of Architect's CAD drawings will be provided by Architect for Contractor's use during construction.
1. Digital data files may be used by Contractor in preparing coordination drawings, Shop Drawings, and Project Record Drawings.
 2. Architect makes no representations as to the accuracy or completeness of digital data files as they relate to Contract Drawings.
 3. Digital Drawing Software Program: Contract Drawings are available in .DWG format .
 4. Contractor shall execute a data licensing agreement in the form of Agreement form acceptable to Owner and Architect.
 - a. Subcontractors and other parties granted access by Contractor to Architect's digital data files shall execute a data licensing agreement in the form of Agreement acceptable to Owner and Architect.
- B. PDF Document Preparation: Where PDFs are required to be submitted to Architect, prepare as follows:
1. Assemble complete submittal package into a single indexed file, incorporating submittal requirements of a single Specification Section and transmittal form with links enabling navigation to each item.
 2. Name file with submittal number or other unique identifier, including revision identifier.
 3. Certifications: Where digitally submitted certificates and certifications are required, provide a digital signature with digital certificate on where indicated.

1.8 PROJECT MEETINGS

- A. General: Schedule and conduct meetings and conferences at Project site unless otherwise indicated.
1. Attendees: Inform participants and others involved, and individuals whose presence is required, of date and time of each meeting. Notify Owner and Architect of scheduled meeting dates and times a minimum of seven days prior to meeting.
 2. Agenda: Prepare the meeting agenda. Distribute the agenda to all invited attendees.
 3. Minutes: Entity responsible for conducting meeting will record significant discussions and agreements achieved. Distribute the meeting minutes to everyone concerned, including Owner and Architect, within three days of the meeting.
- B. Preconstruction Conference: Schedule and conduct a preconstruction conference before starting construction, at a time convenient to Owner and Architect, but no later than 15 days after execution of the Agreement.

1. Attendees: Authorized representatives of Owner, Architect, and their consultants; Contractor and its superintendent; major subcontractors; suppliers; and other concerned parties shall attend the conference. Participants at the conference shall be familiar with Project and authorized to conclude matters relating to the Work.
 2. Agenda: Discuss items of significance that could affect progress, including the following:
 - a. Responsibilities and personnel assignments.
 - b. Tentative construction schedule.
 - c. Phasing.
 - d. Critical work sequencing and long lead items.
 - e. Designation of key personnel and their duties.
 - f. Lines of communications.
 - g. Procedures for processing field decisions and Change Orders.
 - h. Procedures for RFIs.
 - i. Procedures for processing Applications for Payment.
 - j. Distribution of the Contract Documents.
 - k. Submittal procedures.
 - l. Preparation of Record Documents.
 - m. Use of the premises and existing building.
 - n. Work restrictions.
 - o. Working hours.
 - p. Owner's occupancy requirements.
 - q. Responsibility for temporary facilities and controls.
 - r. Procedures for moisture and mold control.
 - s. Procedures for disruptions and shutdowns.
 - t. Construction waste management and recycling.
 - u. Parking availability.
 - v. Office, work, and storage areas.
 - w. Equipment deliveries and priorities.
 - x. First aid.
 - y. Security.
 - z. Progress cleaning.
 3. Minutes: Entity responsible for conducting meeting will record and distribute meeting minutes.
- C. Preinstallation Conferences: Conduct a preinstallation conference at Project site before each construction activity when required by other Sections and when required for coordination with other construction.
1. Attendees: Installer and representatives of manufacturers and fabricators involved in or affected by the installation and its coordination or integration with other materials and installations that have preceded or will follow, shall attend the meeting. Advise Architect of scheduled meeting dates.
 2. Agenda: Review progress of other construction activities and preparations for the particular activity under consideration, including requirements for the following:
 - a. Contract Documents.
 - b. Options.
 - c. Related RFIs.
 - d. Related Change Orders.
 - e. Purchases.
 - f. Deliveries.
 - g. Submittals.
 - h. Review of mockups.
 - i. Possible conflicts.
 - j. Compatibility requirements.

- k. Time schedules.
 - l. Weather limitations.
 - m. Manufacturer's written instructions.
 - n. Warranty requirements.
 - o. Compatibility of materials.
 - p. Acceptability of substrates.
 - q. Temporary facilities and controls.
 - r. Space and access limitations.
 - s. Regulations of authorities having jurisdiction.
 - t. Testing and inspecting requirements.
 - u. Installation procedures.
 - v. Coordination with other work.
 - w. Required performance results.
 - x. Protection of adjacent work.
 - y. Protection of construction and personnel.
- 3. Record significant conference discussions, agreements, and disagreements, including required corrective measures and actions.
 - 4. Reporting: Distribute minutes of the meeting to each party present and to other parties requiring information.
 - 5. Do not proceed with installation if the conference cannot be successfully concluded. Initiate whatever actions are necessary to resolve impediments to performance of the Work and reconvene the conference at earliest feasible date.
- D. Project Closeout Conference: Schedule and conduct a project closeout conference, at a time convenient to Owner and Architect, but no later than 10 days prior to the scheduled date of Substantial Completion.
- 1. Conduct the conference to review requirements and responsibilities related to Project closeout.
 - 2. Attendees: Authorized representatives of Owner, Architect, and their consultants; Contractor and its superintendent; major subcontractors; suppliers; and other concerned parties shall attend the meeting. Participants at the meeting shall be familiar with Project and authorized to conclude matters relating to the Work.
 - 3. Agenda: Discuss items of significance that could affect or delay Project closeout, including the following:
 - a. Preparation of Record Documents.
 - b. Procedures required prior to inspection for Substantial Completion and for final inspection for acceptance.
 - c. Submittal of written warranties.
 - d. Requirements for delivery of material samples, attic stock, and spare parts.
 - e. Preparation of Contractor's punch list.
 - f. Procedures for processing Applications for Payment at Substantial Completion and for final payment.
 - g. Submittal procedures.
 - h. Responsibility for removing temporary facilities and controls.
 - 4. Minutes: Entity conducting meeting will record and distribute meeting minutes.
- E. Progress Meetings: Conduct progress meetings at biweekly intervals.
- 1. Coordinate dates of meetings with preparation of payment requests.
 - 2. Attendees: In addition to representatives of Owner and Architect, each contractor, subcontractor, supplier, and other entity concerned with current progress or involved in planning, coordination, or performance of future activities shall be represented at these

- meetings. All participants at the meeting shall be familiar with Project and authorized to conclude matters relating to the Work.
3. Agenda: Review and correct or approve minutes of previous progress meeting. Review other items of significance that could affect progress. Include topics for discussion as appropriate to status of Project.
 - a. Contractor's Construction Schedule: Review progress since the last meeting. Determine whether each activity is on time, ahead of schedule, or behind schedule, in relation to Contractor's construction schedule. Determine how construction behind schedule will be expedited; secure commitments from parties involved to do so. Discuss whether schedule revisions are required to ensure that current and subsequent activities will be completed within the Contract Time.
 - 1) Review schedule for next period.
 - b. Review present and future needs of each entity present, including the following:
 - 1) Interface requirements.
 - 2) Status of submittals.
 - 3) Deliveries.
 - 4) Off-site fabrication.
 - 5) Access.
 - 6) Site use.
 - 7) Temporary facilities and controls.
 - 8) Progress cleaning.
 - 9) Quality and work standards.
 - 10) Status of correction of deficient items.
 - 11) Field observations.
 - 12) Status of RFIs.
 - 13) Status of Proposal Requests.
 - 14) Pending changes.
 - 15) Status of Change Orders.
 - 16) Pending claims and disputes.
 - 17) Documentation of information for payment requests.
 4. Minutes: Entity responsible for conducting the meeting will record and distribute the meeting minutes to each party present and to parties requiring information.
 - a. Schedule Updating: Revise Contractor's construction schedule after each progress meeting, where revisions to the schedule have been made or recognized. Issue revised schedule concurrently with the report of each meeting.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 013100

SECTION 013200 - CONSTRUCTION PROGRESS DOCUMENTATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for documenting the progress of construction during performance of the Work, including the following:
 - 1. Contractor's Construction Schedule.
 - 2. Construction schedule updating reports.
 - 3. Material location reports.
 - 4. Site condition reports.
 - 5. Unusual event reports.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 012900 "Payment Procedures" for schedule of values and requirements for use of cost-loaded schedule for Applications for Payment.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Activity: A discrete part of a project that can be identified for planning, scheduling, monitoring, and controlling the construction Project. Activities included in a construction schedule consume time and resources.
- B. Event: The starting or ending point of an activity.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Format for Submittals: Submit required submittals in the following format:
 - 1. PDF file.
- B. Contractor's Construction Schedule: Initial schedule, of size required to display entire schedule for entire construction period.
- C. Construction Schedule Updating Reports: Submit with Applications for Payment.
- D. Material Location Reports: Submit at monthly intervals.
- E. Site Condition Reports: Submit at time of discovery of differing conditions.

- F. Unusual Event Reports: Submit at time of unusual event.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

1.6 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate Contractor's Construction Schedule with the schedule of values, list of subcontracts, submittal schedule, progress reports, payment requests, and other required schedules and reports.

1.7 CONTRACTOR'S CONSTRUCTION SCHEDULE

- A. Time Frame: Extend schedule from date established for the Notice of Award to date of Final Completion.
- B. Activities: Treat each floor or separate area as a separate numbered activity for each main element of the Work. Comply with the following:
 - 1. Activity Duration: Define activities so no activity is longer than 30 days, unless specifically allowed by Architect.
 - 2. Temporary Facilities: Indicate start and completion dates for the following as applicable:
 - a. Securing of approvals and permits required for performance of the Work.
 - b. Temporary facilities.
 - c. Construction of mock-ups, prototypes and samples.
 - d. Regulatory agency approvals.
 - e. Punch list.
 - 3. Procurement Activities: Include procurement process activities for the following potential long lead-time items and major items, requiring a cycle of more than 60 days, as separate activities in schedule. Procurement cycle activities include, but are not limited to, submittals, approvals, purchasing, fabrication, and delivery.
 - a. Wood trusses .
 - b. LVL framing.
 - c. Cast Stone.
 - 4. Submittal Review Time: Include review and resubmittal times indicated in Section 013300 "Submittal Procedures" in schedule. Coordinate submittal review times in Contractor's Construction Schedule with submittal schedule.
 - 5. Substantial Completion: Indicate completion in advance of date established for Substantial Completion, and allow time for Architect's administrative procedures necessary for certification of Substantial Completion.
 - 6. Punch List and Final Completion: Include not more than 30 days for completion of punch list items and Final Completion.
- C. Constraints: Include constraints and work restrictions indicated in the Contract Documents and as follows in schedule, and show how the sequence of the Work is affected.
 - 1. Work Restrictions: Show the effect of the following items on the schedule:
 - a. Coordination with existing construction.
 - b. Uninterruptible services.
 - c. Use-of-premises restrictions.
 - d. Provisions for future construction.

- e. Seasonal variations.
 - f. Environmental control.
 2. Work Stages: Indicate important stages of construction for each major portion of the Work, including, but not limited to, the following:
 - a. Subcontract awards.
 - b. Submittals.
 - c. Purchases.
 - d. Fabrication.
 - e. Deliveries.
 - f. Installation.
 - g. Curing.
 3. Construction Areas: Identify each major area of construction for each major portion of the Work. Indicate where each construction activity within a major area must be sequenced or integrated with other construction activities to provide for the following:
 - a. Structural completion.
 - b. Temporary enclosure.
 - c. Permanent space enclosure.
 - d. Substantial Completion.
- D. Upcoming Work Summary: Prepare summary report indicating activities scheduled to occur or commence prior to submittal of next schedule update. Summarize the following issues:
 1. Unresolved issues.
 2. Unanswered Requests for Information.
 3. Rejected or unreturned submittals.
 4. Notations on returned submittals.
 5. Pending modifications affecting the Work and the Contract Time.
- E. Contractor's Construction Schedule Updating: At monthly intervals, update schedule to reflect actual construction progress and activities. Issue schedule one week before each regularly scheduled progress meeting.
 1. Revise schedule immediately after each meeting or other activity where revisions have been recognized or made. Issue updated schedule concurrently with the report of each such meeting.
 2. Include a report with updated schedule that indicates every change, including, but not limited to, changes in logic, durations, actual starts and finishes, and activity durations.
 3. As the Work progresses, indicate Final Completion percentage for each activity.
- F. Distribution: Distribute copies of approved schedule to Architect Owner, separate contractors, testing and inspecting agencies, and other parties identified by Contractor with a need-to-know schedule responsibility.
 1. Post copies in Project meeting rooms and temporary field offices.
 2. When revisions are made, distribute updated schedules to the same parties and post in the same locations. Delete parties from distribution when they have completed their assigned portion of the Work and are no longer involved in performance of construction activities.

1.8 GANTT-CHART SCHEDULE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Gantt-Chart Schedule: Submit a comprehensive, fully developed, horizontal, Gantt-chart-type, Contractor's Construction Schedule within 30 days of date established for the Notice of Award.

- B. Preparation: Indicate each significant construction activity separately. Identify first workday of each week with a continuous vertical line.
 - 1. For construction activities that require three months or longer to complete, indicate an estimated completion percentage in 10 percent increments within time bar.

1.9 REPORTS

- A. Daily Construction Reports: Prepare a daily construction report recording the following information concerning events at Project site:
 - 1. List of subcontractors at Project site.
 - 2. List of separate contractors at Project site.
 - 3. Approximate count of personnel at Project site.
 - 4. Equipment at Project site.
 - 5. Material deliveries.
 - 6. High and low temperatures and general weather conditions, including presence of rain or snow.
 - 7. Testing and inspection.
 - 8. Accidents.
 - 9. Meetings and significant decisions.
 - 10. Unusual events.
 - 11. Stoppages, delays, shortages, and losses.
 - 12. Meter readings and similar recordings.
 - 13. Emergency procedures.
 - 14. Orders and requests of authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 15. Change Orders received and implemented.
 - 16. Construction Change Directives received and implemented.
 - 17. Services connected and disconnected.
 - 18. Substantial Completions authorized.
- B. Material Location Reports: At monthly intervals, prepare and submit a comprehensive list of materials delivered to and stored at Project site. List shall be cumulative, showing materials previously reported plus items recently delivered. Include with list a statement of progress on and delivery dates for materials or items of equipment fabricated or stored away from Project site. Indicate the following categories for stored materials:
 - 1. Material stored prior to previous report and remaining in storage.
 - 2. Material stored prior to previous report and since removed from storage and installed.
 - 3. Material stored following previous report and remaining in storage.
- C. Site Condition Reports: Immediately on discovery of a difference between site conditions and the Contract Documents, prepare and submit a detailed report. Submit with a Request for Information. Include a detailed description of the differing conditions, together with recommendations for changing the Contract Documents.
- D. Unusual Event Reports: When an event of an unusual and significant nature occurs at Project site, whether or not related directly to the Work, prepare and submit a special report. List chain of events, persons participating, responses by Contractor's personnel, evaluation of results or effects, and similar pertinent information. Advise Owner in advance when these events are known or predictable.

1. Submit unusual event reports directly to Owner within one day(s) of an occurrence. Distribute copies of report to parties affected by the occurrence.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 013200

SECTION 013300 - SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Submittal schedule requirements.
- 2. Administrative and procedural requirements for submittals.

- B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 012900 "Payment Procedures" for submitting Applications for Payment and the schedule of values.
- 2. Section 013100 "Project Management and Coordination" for submitting coordination drawings and subcontract list and for requirements for web-based Project software.
- 3. Section 013200 "Construction Progress Documentation" for submitting schedules and reports, including Contractor's construction schedule.
- 4. Section 017700 "Closeout Procedures" for submitting closeout submittals and maintenance material submittals.
- 5. Section 017839 "Project Record Documents" for submitting record Drawings, record Specifications, and record Product Data.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Action Submittals: Written and graphic information and physical samples that require Architect's responsive action. Action submittals are those submittals indicated in individual Specification Sections as "action submittals."
- B. Informational Submittals: Written and graphic information and physical samples that do not require Architect's responsive action. Submittals may be rejected for not complying with requirements. Informational submittals are those submittals indicated in individual Specification Sections as "informational submittals."

1.4 SUBMITTAL SCHEDULE

- A. Submittal Schedule: Submit, as an action submittal, a list of submittals, arranged in chronological order by dates required by construction schedule. Include time required for review, ordering, manufacturing, fabrication, and delivery when establishing dates. Include additional time required for making corrections or revisions to submittals noted by Architect and additional time for handling and reviewing submittals required by those corrections.

1. Coordinate submittal schedule with list of subcontracts, the schedule of values, and Contractor's construction schedule.
2. Format: Arrange the following information in a tabular format:
 - a. Scheduled date for first submittal.
 - b. Specification Section number and title.
 - c. Submittal Category: Action; informational.

1.5 SUBMITTAL FORMATS

A. Submittal Information: Include the following information in each submittal:

1. Project name.
2. Date.
3. Name of Architect.
4. Name of Contractor.
5. Name of firm or entity that prepared submittal.
6. Names of subcontractor, manufacturer, and supplier.
7. Unique submittal number, including revision identifier. Include Specification Section number with sequential alphanumeric identifier and alphanumeric suffix for resubmittals.
8. Category and type of submittal.
9. Submittal purpose and description.
10. Number and title of Specification Section, with paragraph number and generic name for each of multiple items.
11. Drawing number and detail references, as appropriate.
12. Indication of full or partial submittal.
13. Location(s) where product is to be installed, as appropriate.
14. Other necessary identification.
15. Remarks.
16. Signature of transmitter.

B. Options: Identify options requiring selection by Architect.

C. Deviations and Additional Information: On each submittal, clearly indicate deviations from requirements in the Contract Documents, including minor variations and limitations; include relevant additional information and revisions, other than those requested by Architect on previous submittals. Indicate by highlighting on each submittal or noting on attached separate sheet.

D. Electronic Submittals: Prepare submittals as PDF package, incorporating complete information into each PDF file. Name PDF file with submittal number.

1.6 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES

A. Prepare and submit submittals required by individual Specification Sections. Types of submittals are indicated in individual Specification Sections.

1. Email: Prepare submittals as PDF package and transmit to Architect by sending via email. Include PDF transmittal form. Include information in email subject line as requested by Architect.
 - a. Architect will return annotated file. Annotate and retain one copy of file as a digital Project Record Document file.

- B. Coordination: Coordinate preparation and processing of submittals with performance of construction activities.
1. Coordinate each submittal with fabrication, purchasing, testing, delivery, other submittals, and related activities that require sequential activity.
 2. Submit all submittal items required for each Specification Section concurrently unless partial submittals for portions of the Work are indicated on approved submittal schedule.
 3. Submit action submittals and informational submittals required by the same Specification Section as separate packages under separate transmittals.
 4. Coordinate transmittal of submittals for related parts of the Work specified in different Sections, so processing will not be delayed because of need to review submittals concurrently for coordination.
 - a. Architect reserves the right to withhold action on a submittal requiring coordination with other submittals until related submittals are received.
- C. Processing Time: Allow time for submittal review, including time for resubmittals, as follows. Time for review shall commence on Architect's receipt of submittal. No extension of the Contract Time will be authorized because of failure to transmit submittals enough in advance of the Work to permit processing, including resubmittals.
1. Initial Review: Allow 15 days for initial review of each submittal. Allow additional time if coordination with subsequent submittals is required. Architect will advise Contractor when a submittal being processed must be delayed for coordination.
 2. Intermediate Review: If intermediate submittal is necessary, process it in same manner as initial submittal.
 3. Resubmittal Review: Allow 15 days for review of each resubmittal.
 4. Concurrent Consultant Review: Where the Contract Documents indicate that submittals may be transmitted simultaneously to Architect and to Architect's consultants, allow 15 days for review of each submittal. Submittal will be returned to Architect before being returned to Contractor.
 - a. Submit one copy of submittal to concurrent reviewer in addition to specified number of copies to Architect.
- D. Resubmittals: Make resubmittals in same form and number of copies as initial submittal.
1. Note date and content of previous submittal.
 2. Note date and content of revision in label or title block, and clearly indicate extent of revision.
 3. Resubmit submittals until they are marked with approval notation from Architect's action stamp.
- E. Distribution: Furnish copies of final submittals to manufacturers, subcontractors, suppliers, fabricators, installers, authorities having jurisdiction, and others as necessary for performance of construction activities. Show distribution on transmittal forms.
- F. Use for Construction: Retain complete copies of submittals on Project site. Use only final action submittals that are marked with approval notation from Architect's action stamp.

1.7 SUBMITTAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Product Data: Collect information into a single submittal for each element of construction and type of product or equipment.

1. If information must be specially prepared for submittal because standard published data are unsuitable for use, submit as Shop Drawings, not as Product Data.
 2. Mark each copy of each submittal to show which products and options are applicable.
 3. Include the following information, as applicable:
 - a. Manufacturer's catalog cuts.
 - b. Manufacturer's product specifications.
 - c. Standard color charts.
 - d. Statement of compliance with specified referenced standards.
 - e. Testing by recognized testing agency.
 - f. Notation of coordination requirements.
 4. Submit Product Data before Shop Drawings, and before or concurrently with Samples.
- B. Shop Drawings: Prepare Project-specific information, drawn accurately to scale. Do not base Shop Drawings on reproductions of the Contract Documents or standard printed data unless submittal based on Architect's digital data drawing files is otherwise permitted.
1. Preparation: Fully illustrate requirements in the Contract Documents. Include the following information, as applicable:
 - a. Identification of products.
 - b. Schedules.
 - c. Compliance with specified standards.
 - d. Notation of coordination requirements.
 - e. Notation of dimensions established by field measurement.
 - f. Relationship and attachment to adjoining construction clearly indicated.
 - g. Seal and signature of professional engineer if specified.
- C. Samples: Submit Samples for review of type, color, pattern, and texture for a check of these characteristics with other materials.
1. Transmit Samples that contain multiple, related components, such as accessories together in one submittal package.
 2. Identification: Permanently attach label on unexposed side of Samples that includes the following:
 - a. Project name and submittal number.
 - b. Generic description of Sample.
 - c. Product name and name of manufacturer.
 - d. Sample source.
 - e. Number and title of applicable Specification Section.
 - f. Specification paragraph number and generic name of each item.
 3. Email Transmittal: Provide PDF transmittal. Include digital image file illustrating Sample characteristics and identification information for record.
 4. Disposition: Maintain sets of approved Samples at Project site, available for quality-control comparisons throughout the course of construction activity. Sample sets may be used to determine final acceptance of construction associated with each set.
 - a. Samples that may be incorporated into the Work are indicated in individual Specification Sections. Such Samples must be in an undamaged condition at time of use.
 - b. Samples not incorporated into the Work, or otherwise designated as Owner's property, are the property of Contractor.
 5. Samples for Initial Selection: Submit manufacturer's color charts consisting of units or sections of units, showing the full range of colors, textures, and patterns available.
 - a. Number of Samples: Submit one full set(s) of available choices where color, pattern, texture, or similar characteristics are required to be selected from manufacturer's product line. Architect will return submittal with options selected.

6. Samples for Verification: Submit full-size units or Samples of size indicated, prepared from same material to be used for the Work, cured and finished in manner specified, and physically identical with material or product proposed for use, and that show full range of color and texture variations expected. Samples include, but are not limited to, the following: partial sections of manufactured or fabricated components; small cuts or containers of materials; complete units of repetitively used materials; swatches showing color, texture, and pattern; color range sets; and components used for independent testing and inspection.
 - a. Number of Samples: Submit three sets of Samples. Architect will retain one Sample set; remainder will be returned. Mark up and retain one returned Sample set as a project record Sample.
 - 1) Submit a single Sample where assembly details, workmanship, fabrication techniques, connections, operation, and other similar characteristics are to be demonstrated.
 - 2) If variation in color, pattern, texture, or other characteristic is inherent in material or product represented by a Sample, submit at least three sets of paired units that show approximate limits of variations.
- D. Product Schedule: As required in individual Specification Sections, prepare a written summary indicating types of products required for the Work and their intended location. Include the following information in tabular form:
 1. Type of product. Include unique identifier for each product indicated in the Contract Documents or assigned by Contractor if none is indicated.
 2. Manufacturer and product name, and model number if applicable.
 3. Number and name of room or space.
 4. Location within room or space.
- E. Qualification Data: Prepare written information that demonstrates capabilities and experience of firm or person. Include lists of completed projects with project names and addresses, contact information of architects and owners, and other information specified.
- F. Design Data: Prepare and submit written and graphic information indicating compliance with indicated performance and design criteria in individual Specification Sections. Include list of assumptions and summary of loads. Include load diagrams if applicable. Provide name and version of software, if any, used for calculations. Number each page of submittal.
- G. Certificates:
 1. Certificates and Certifications Submittals: Submit a statement that includes signature of entity responsible for preparing certification. Certificates and certifications shall be signed by an officer or other individual authorized to sign documents on behalf of that entity. Provide a notarized signature where indicated.
 2. Installer Certificates: Submit written statements on manufacturer's letterhead, certifying that Installer complies with requirements in the Contract Documents and, where required, is authorized by manufacturer for this specific Project.
 3. Manufacturer Certificates: Submit written statements on manufacturer's letterhead, certifying that manufacturer complies with requirements in the Contract Documents. Include evidence of manufacturing experience where required.
 4. Material Certificates: Submit written statements on manufacturer's letterhead, certifying that material complies with requirements in the Contract Documents.
 5. Product Certificates: Submit written statements on manufacturer's letterhead, certifying that product complies with requirements in the Contract Documents.

6. Welding Certificates: Prepare written certification that welding procedures and personnel comply with requirements in the Contract Documents. Submit record of AWS B2.1/B2.1M on AWS forms. Include names of firms and personnel certified.

H. Test and Research Reports:

1. Compatibility Test Reports: Submit reports written by a qualified testing agency, on testing agency's standard form, indicating and interpreting results of compatibility tests performed before installation of product. Include written recommendations for substrate preparation and primers required.
2. Material Test Reports: Submit reports written by a qualified testing agency, on testing agency's standard form, indicating and interpreting test results of material for compliance with requirements in the Contract Documents.
3. Product Test Reports: Submit written reports indicating that current product produced by manufacturer complies with requirements in the Contract Documents. Base reports on evaluation of tests performed by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency, or on comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency.

1.8 DELEGATED-DESIGN SERVICES

- A. Performance and Design Criteria: Where professional design services or certifications by a design professional are specifically required of Contractor by the Contract Documents, provide products and systems complying with specific performance and design criteria indicated.
 1. If criteria indicated are insufficient to perform services or certification required, submit a written request for additional information to Architect.
- B. Delegated-Design Services Certification: In addition to Shop Drawings, Product Data, and other required submittals, submit digitally signed PDF file of certificate, signed and sealed by the responsible design professional, for each product and system specifically assigned to Contractor to be designed or certified by a design professional.
 1. Indicate that products and systems comply with performance and design criteria in the Contract Documents. Include list of codes, loads, and other factors used in performing these services.

1.9 CONTRACTOR'S REVIEW

- A. Action Submittals and Informational Submittals: Review each submittal and check for coordination with other Work of the Contract and for compliance with the Contract Documents. Note corrections and field dimensions. Mark with approval stamp before submitting to Architect.
- B. Contractor's Approval: Indicate Contractor's approval for each submittal with a uniform approval stamp . Include name of reviewer, date of Contractor's approval, and statement certifying that submittal has been reviewed, checked, and approved for compliance with the Contract Documents.
 1. Architect will not review submittals received from Contractor that do not have Contractor's review and approval.

1.10 ARCHITECT'S REVIEW

- A. Action Submittals: Architect will review each submittal, indicate corrections or revisions required , and return.
 - 1. PDF Submittals: Architect will indicate, via markup on each submittal, the appropriate action .
- B. Informational Submittals: Architect will review each submittal and will not return it, or will return it if it does not comply with requirements. Architect will forward each submittal to appropriate party.
- C. Partial submittals prepared for a portion of the Work will be reviewed when use of partial submittals has received prior approval from Architect.
- D. Incomplete submittals are unacceptable, will be considered nonresponsive, and will be returned for resubmittal without review.
- E. Architect will return without review submittals received from sources other than Contractor.
- F. Submittals not required by the Contract Documents will be returned by Architect without action.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 013300

SECTION 013591 - HISTORIC TREATMENT PROCEDURES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes general protection and treatment procedures for designated historic spaces, areas, rooms, and surfaces in Project.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Consolidate: To strengthen loose or deteriorated materials in place.
- B. Design Reference Sample: A sample that represents Architect's prebid selection of work to be matched; it may be existing work or work specially produced for Project.
- C. Dismantle: To disassemble or detach a historic item from a surface, or a nonhistoric item from a historic surface, using gentle methods and equipment to prevent damage to historic items and surfaces; disposing of items unless indicated to be salvaged or reinstalled.
- D. Match: To blend with adjacent construction and manifest no apparent difference in material type, species, cut, form, detail, color, grain, texture, or finish; as approved by Architect.
- E. Refinish: To remove existing finishes to base material and apply new finish to match original, or as otherwise indicated.
- F. Reinstall: To protect removed or dismantled item, repair and clean it as indicated for reuse, and reinstall it in original position, or where indicated.
- G. Remove: To take down or detach a nonhistoric item located within a historic space, area, or room, using methods and equipment to prevent damage to historic items and surfaces; disposing of items unless indicated to be salvaged or reinstalled.
- H. Repair: To correct damage and defects, retaining existing materials, features, and finishes while employing as little new material as possible. This includes patching, piecing-in, splicing, consolidating, or otherwise reinforcing or upgrading materials.
- I. Replace: To remove, duplicate, and reinstall entire item with new material. The original item is the pattern for creating duplicates unless otherwise indicated.
- J. Replicate: To reproduce in exact detail, materials, and finish unless otherwise indicated.
- K. Reproduce: To fabricate a new item, accurate in detail to the original, and from either the same or a similar material as the original, unless otherwise indicated.
- L. Restore: To consolidate, replicate, reproduce, repair, and refinish as required to achieve the indicated results.
- M. Retain: To keep an element or detail secure and intact.

- N. Reversible: New construction work, treatments, or processes that can be removed or undone in the future without damaging historic materials unless otherwise indicated.
- O. Salvage: To protect removed or dismantled items and deliver them to Owner.
- P. Stabilize: To provide structural reinforcement of unsafe or deteriorated items while maintaining the essential form as it exists at present; also, to reestablish a weather-resistant enclosure.
- Q. Strip: To remove existing finish down to base material unless otherwise indicated.

1.3 COORDINATION

- A. Pedestrian and Vehicular Circulation: Coordinate historic treatment work with circulation patterns within Project building(s) and site. Some work is overhead of site circulation areas . Plan and execute the Work accordingly.

1.4 PROJECT MEETINGS FOR HISTORIC TREATMENT

- A. Preliminary Historic Treatment Conference: Before starting historic treatment work, conduct conference at Project site .
 - 1. Attendees: In addition to representatives of Owner, Architect, and Contractor, historic treatment specialists, and installers whose work interfaces with or affects historic treatment shall be represented at the meeting.
 - 2. Agenda: Discuss items of significance that could affect progress of historic treatment work, including review of the following:
 - a. Historic Treatment Subschedule: Discuss and finalize; verify availability of materials, historic treatment specialists' personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
 - b. Fire-prevention plan.
 - c. Governing regulations.
 - d. Areas where existing construction is to remain and the required protection.
 - e. Hauling routes.
 - f. Sequence of historic treatment work operations.
 - g. Storage, protection, and accounting for salvaged and specially fabricated items.
 - h. Existing conditions, staging, and structural loading limitations of areas where materials are stored.
 - i. Qualifications of personnel assigned to historic treatment work and assigned duties.
 - j. Requirements for extent and quality of work, tolerances, and required clearances.
 - k. Methods and procedures related to historic treatments, including product manufacturers' written instructions and precautions regarding historic treatment procedures and their effects on materials, components, and vegetation.
 - l. Embedded work such as flashings and lintels, special details, collection of wastes, protection of occupants and the public, and condition of other construction that affect the Work or will affect the work.
 - 3. Reporting: Record conference results and distribute copies to everyone in attendance and to others affected by decisions or actions resulting from conference.
- B. Coordination Meetings: Conduct specifically for historic treatment work at Progress Meeting intervals.

1. Attendees: In addition to representatives of Owner, Architect, and Contractor, each historic treatment specialist, supplier, installer, and other entity concerned with progress or involved in planning, coordination, or performance of historic treatment work activities shall be represented at these meetings. All participants at conference shall be familiar with Project and authorized to conclude matters relating to historic treatment work.
2. Agenda: Review and correct or approve minutes of previous coordination meeting. Review other items of significance that could affect progress of historic treatment work. Include topics for discussion as appropriate to status of Project.
 - a. Review progress since last coordination meeting. Determine whether each schedule item is on time, ahead of schedule, or behind schedule. Determine how construction behind schedule will be expedited with retention of quality; secure commitments from parties involved to do so. Discuss whether schedule revisions are required to ensure that current and subsequent activities are completed within the Contract Time.
 - b. Schedule Updating: Revise after each coordination meeting where revisions to schedule have been made or recognized. Issue revised schedule concurrently with report of each meeting.
 - c. Review present and future needs of each entity present, including review items listed in the "Preliminary Historic Treatment Conference" Paragraph in this article and the following:
 - 1) Interface requirements of historic treatment work with other Project Work.
 - 2) Status of submittals for historic treatment work.
 - 3) Access to historic treatment work.
 - 4) Effectiveness of fire-prevention plan.
 - 5) Quality and work standards of historic treatment work.
 - 6) Change Orders for historic treatment work.
3. Reporting: Record meeting results and distribute copies to everyone in attendance and to others affected by decisions or actions resulting from each meeting.

1.5 MATERIALS OWNERSHIP

- A. Historic items, relics, and similar objects including, but not limited to, cornerstones and their contents, commemorative plaques and tablets, antiques, and other items of interest or value to Owner that may be encountered or uncovered during the Work, regardless of whether they were previously documented, remain Owner's property.
 1. Dismantle and salvage each item or object and protect it from damage, then promptly deliver it to Owner where directed at Project site .

1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Historic Treatment Program: Submit 30 days before work begins.
- B. Fire-Prevention Plan: Submit 30 days before work begins.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Historic Treatment Specialist Qualifications: An experienced firm regularly engaged in historic treatments similar in nature, materials, design, and extent to the work as specified in each Section and that has completed a minimum of five recent projects with a record of successful in-service performance that demonstrates the firm's qualifications to perform this work.

1. Field Supervisor Qualifications: Full-time supervisors experienced in historic treatment work similar in nature, material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project. Supervisors shall be on site when historic treatment work begins and during its progress. Supervisors shall not be changed during Project except for causes beyond control of the specialist firm.
 - B. Historic Treatment Program: Prepare a written plan for historic treatment for whole Project, including each phase or process and protection of surrounding materials during operations. Describe in detail the materials, methods, and equipment to be used for each phase of work. Show compliance with indicated methods and procedures specified in this and other Sections. Coordinate this whole-Project historic treatment program with specific requirements of programs required in other historic treatment Sections.
 1. Debris Hauling: Include plans clearly marked to show debris hauling routes, turning radii, and locations and details of temporary protective barriers.
 - C. Fire-Prevention Plan: Prepare a written plan for preventing fires during the Work, including placement of fire extinguishers, fire blankets, rag buckets, and other fire-control devices during each phase or process. Coordinate plan with Owner's fire-protection equipment and requirements. Include fire-watch personnel's training, duties, and authority to enforce fire safety.
 - D. Safety and Health Standard: ANSI/ASSP A10.6.
- 1.8 STORAGE AND HANDLING OF HISTORIC MATERIALS
- A. Identification: Photograph, tag, and catalog historic items to be salvaged or reinstalled.
 1. Identify each item with a nonpermanent location identification tag indicating item name or use, location, and location identification number to document its original location. Indicate original locations on plans, elevations, sections, or photographs by annotating the identifying tag.
 - a. For groups of material, such as brick, provide location identification tag for pallet or container. Do not tag individually.
 - B. Salvaged Historic Materials:
 1. Clean loose dirt and debris from salvaged historic items unless more extensive cleaning is indicated.
 2. Store items in a secure area until delivery to Owner.
 3. Transport items to Owner's storage area on-site designated by Owner .
 4. Protect items from damage during transport and storage.
 - C. Historic Materials for Reinstallation:
 1. Repair and clean historic items for reuse as indicated.
 2. Protect items from damage during transport and storage.
 3. Reinstall items in locations indicated. Comply with installation requirements for new materials and equipment unless otherwise indicated. Provide connections, supports, and miscellaneous materials to make items functional for use indicated.
 - D. Existing Historic Materials to Remain: Protect construction indicated to remain against damage and soiling from construction work. Where permitted by Architect, items may be dismantled and

taken to a suitable, protected storage location during construction work and reinstalled in their original locations after historic treatment and construction work in the vicinity is complete.

- E. Storage: Store historic items within a weathertight enclosure where they are protected from moisture, weather, condensation, and freezing temperatures.
 - 1. Secure stored materials to protect from theft.
- F. Storage Space:
 - 1. Owner will arrange for limited on-site location(s) for free storage of historic material.

1.9 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Size Limitations in Historic Spaces: Materials, products, and equipment used for performing the Work and for transporting debris, materials, and products shall be of sizes that clear surfaces within historic spaces, areas, rooms, and openings, including temporary protection, by 12 inches or more.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS - (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PROTECTION

- A. Protect persons, motor vehicles, surrounding surfaces of building, building site, plants, and surrounding buildings from harm resulting from historic treatment procedures.
 - 1. Use only proven protection methods, appropriate to each area and surface being protected.
 - 2. Provide temporary barricades, barriers, and directional signage to exclude the public from areas where historic treatment work is being performed.
 - 3. Erect temporary barriers to form and maintain fire-egress routes.
 - 4. Provide shoring, bracing, and supports as necessary. Do not overload structural elements.
 - 5. Protect floors and other surfaces along hauling routes from damage, wear, and staining.
- B. Temporary Protection of Historic Materials:
 - 1. Protect existing historic materials with temporary protections and construction. Do not remove existing materials unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. Do not attach temporary protection to historic surfaces except as indicated as part of the historic treatment program and approved by Architect.
- C. Comply with each product manufacturer's written instructions for protections and precautions. Protect against adverse effects of products and procedures on people and adjacent materials, components, and vegetation.
- D. Utility and Communications Services:

1. Notify Owner, Architect, authorities having jurisdiction, and entities owning or controlling wires, conduits, pipes, and other services affected by historic treatment work before commencing operations.
 2. Disconnect and cap pipes and services as required by authorities having jurisdiction, as required for historic treatment work.
 3. Maintain existing services unless otherwise indicated; keep in service, and protect against damage during operations. Provide temporary services during interruptions to existing utilities.
- E. Existing Drains: Prior to the start of work in an area, test drainage system to ensure that it is functioning properly. Notify Architect immediately of inadequate drainage or blockage. Do not begin work in an area until the drainage system is functioning properly.
1. Prevent solids such as stone or mortar residue or other debris from entering the drainage system. Clean out drains and drain lines that become sluggish or blocked by sand or other materials resulting from historic treatment work.
 2. Protect drains from pollutants. Block drains or filter out sediments, allowing only clean water to pass.

3.2 PROTECTION FROM FIRE

- A. Follow fire-prevention plan and the following:
1. Comply with NFPA 241 requirements unless otherwise indicated.
 2. Remove and keep area free of combustibles, including rubbish, paper, waste, and chemicals, unless necessary for the immediate work.
 - a. If combustible material cannot be removed, provide fire blankets to cover such materials.
 3. Prohibit smoking by all persons within Project work and staging areas.
- B. Heat-Generating Equipment and Combustible Materials: Comply with the following procedures while performing work with heat-generating equipment or combustible materials, including welding, torch-cutting, soldering, brazing, removing paint with heat, or other operations where open flames or implements using high heat or combustible solvents and chemicals are anticipated:
1. Obtain Owner's approval for operations involving use of welding or other high-heat equipment. Use of open-flame equipment is not permitted. Notify Owner at least 72 hours before each occurrence, indicating location of such work.
 2. As far as practicable, restrict heat-generating equipment to shop areas or outside the building.
 3. Do not perform work with heat-generating equipment in or near rooms or in areas where flammable liquids or explosive vapors are present or thought to be present. Use a combustible gas indicator test to ensure that area is safe.
 4. Use fireproof baffles to prevent flames, sparks, hot gases, or other high-temperature material from reaching surrounding combustible material.
 5. Prevent the spread of sparks and particles of hot metal through open windows, doors, holes, and cracks in floors, walls, ceilings, roofs, and other openings.
 6. Fire Watch: Before working with heat-generating equipment or combustible materials, station personnel to serve as a fire watch at each location where such work is performed. Fire-watch personnel shall have the authority to enforce fire safety. Station fire watch according to NFPA 51B, NFPA 241, and as follows:
 - a. Train each fire watch in proper operation of fire-control equipment and alarms.

- b. Prohibit fire-watch personnel from other work that would distract from fire-watch duties.
 - c. Cease work with heat-generating equipment whenever fire-watch personnel are not present.
 - d. Have fire-watch personnel perform final fire-safety inspection each day beginning no sooner than 30 minutes after conclusion of work to detect hidden or smoldering fires and to ensure that proper fire prevention is maintained.
 - e. Maintain fire-watch personnel at each area of Project site until 60 minutes after conclusion of daily work.
- C. Fire-Control Devices: Provide and maintain fire extinguishers, fire blankets, and rag buckets for disposal of rags with combustible liquids. Maintain each as suitable for type of fire risk in each work area. Ensure that nearby personnel and fire-watch personnel are trained in fire-extinguisher and blanket use.

3.3 GENERAL HISTORIC TREATMENT

- A. Have historic treatment work performed only by qualified historic treatment specialists.
- B. Ensure that supervisory personnel are present when historic treatment work begins and during its progress.
- C. Perform daily inspections of Project site as the Work progresses to detect hazards resulting from historic treatment procedures.
- D. Follow the procedures in subparagraphs below and procedures approved in historic treatment program unless otherwise indicated:
 - 1. Retain as much existing material as possible; repair and consolidate rather than replace.
 - 2. Use additional material or structure to reinforce, strengthen, prop, tie, and support existing material or structure.
 - 3. Use reversible processes wherever possible.
 - 4. Use historically accurate repair and replacement materials and techniques unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Notify Architect of visible changes in the integrity of material or components whether from environmental causes including biological attack, UV degradation, freezing, or thawing or from structural defects including cracks, movement, or distortion.
 - 1. Do not proceed with the work in question until directed by Architect.
- F. Where missing features are indicated to be repaired or replaced, provide work with appearance based on accurate duplications rather than on conjecture, subject to approval of Architect.
- G. Where work requires existing features to be removed or dismantled and reinstalled, perform these operations without damage to the material itself, to adjacent materials, or to the substrate.
- H. Identify new and replacement materials and features with permanent marks hidden in the completed Work to distinguish them from original materials. Record a legend of identification marks and the locations of the items on record Drawings.

3.4 HISTORIC TREATMENT SCHEDULE

- A. Spaces, areas, rooms, and surfaces requiring special care and treatment to ensure successful rehabilitation and reconstruction are indicated on Drawings .

END OF SECTION 013591

SECTION 014200 - REFERENCES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 DEFINITIONS

- A. General: Basic Contract definitions are included in the Conditions of the Contract.
- B. "Approved": When used to convey Architect's action on Contractor's submittals, applications, and requests, "approved" is limited to Architect's duties and responsibilities as stated in the Conditions of the Contract.
- C. "Directed": A command or instruction by Architect. Other terms including "requested," "authorized," "selected," "required," and "permitted" have the same meaning as "directed."
- D. "Indicated": Requirements expressed by graphic representations or in written form on Drawings, in Specifications, and in other Contract Documents. Other terms including "shown," "noted," "scheduled," and "specified" have the same meaning as "indicated."
- E. "Regulations": Laws, ordinances, statutes, and lawful orders issued by authorities having jurisdiction, and rules, conventions, and agreements within the construction industry that control performance of the Work.
- F. "Furnish": Supply and deliver to Project site, ready for unloading, unpacking, assembly, installation, and similar operations.
- G. "Install": Unload, temporarily store, unpack, assemble, erect, place, anchor, apply, work to dimension, finish, cure, protect, clean, and similar operations at Project site.
- H. "Provide": Furnish and install, complete and ready for the intended use.
- I. "Project Site": Space available for performing construction activities. The extent of Project site is shown on Drawings and may or may not be identical with the description of the land on which Project is to be built.

1.2 INDUSTRY STANDARDS

- A. Applicability of Standards: Unless the Contract Documents include more stringent requirements, applicable construction industry standards have the same force and effect as if bound or copied directly into the Contract Documents to the extent referenced. Such standards are made a part of the Contract Documents by reference.
- B. Publication Dates: Comply with standards in effect as of date of the Contract Documents unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. For standards referenced by applicable building codes, comply with dates of standards as listed in building codes.

- C. Copies of Standards: Each entity engaged in construction on Project should be familiar with industry standards applicable to its construction activity. Copies of applicable standards are not bound with the Contract Documents.
1. Where copies of standards are needed to perform a required construction activity, obtain copies directly from publication source.

1.3 ABBREVIATIONS AND ACRONYMS

- A. Industry Organizations: Where abbreviations and acronyms are used in Specifications or other Contract Documents, they shall mean the recognized name of the entities in the following list. The information in this list is subject to change and is believed to be accurate as of the date of the Contract Documents.

1. AAMA - American Architectural Manufacturers Association; (See FGIA).
2. AASHTO - American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials; www.transportation.org.
3. ABMA - American Bearing Manufacturers Association; www.americanbearings.org.
4. ACI - American Concrete Institute; (Formerly: ACI International); www.concrete.org.
5. ACPA - American Concrete Pipe Association; www.concrete-pipe.org.
6. AIA - American Institute of Architects (The); www.aia.org.
7. AISC - American Institute of Steel Construction; www.aisc.org.
8. AISI - American Iron and Steel Institute; www.steel.org.
9. AITC - American Institute of Timber Construction; www.plib.org.
10. ANSI - American National Standards Institute; www.ansi.org.
11. APA - APA - The Engineered Wood Association; www.apawood.org.
12. APA - Architectural Precast Association; www.archprecast.org.
13. ARMA - Asphalt Roofing Manufacturers Association; www.asphaltroofing.org.
14. ASCE - American Society of Civil Engineers; www.asce.org.
15. ASCE/SEI - American Society of Civil Engineers/Structural Engineering Institute; (See ASCE).
16. ASSE - American Society of Sanitary Engineering; www.asse-plumbing.org.
17. ASSP - American Society of Safety Professionals (The); www.assp.org.
18. ASTM - ASTM International; www.astm.org.
19. AWI - Architectural Woodwork Institute; www.awinet.org.
20. AWPA - American Wood Protection Association; www.awpa.com.
21. AWS - American Welding Society; www.aws.org.
22. AWWA - American Water Works Association; www.awwa.org.
23. BIA - Brick Industry Association (The); www.gobrick.com.
24. CDA - Copper Development Association; www.copper.org.
25. CFSEI - Cold-Formed Steel Engineers Institute; www.cfsei.org.
26. CISPI - Cast Iron Soil Pipe Institute; www.cispi.org.
27. CLFMI - Chain Link Fence Manufacturers Institute; www.chainlinkinfo.org.
28. CPA - Composite Panel Association; www.compositepanel.org.
29. CRSI - Concrete Reinforcing Steel Institute; www.crsi.org.
30. CSI - Cast Stone Institute; www.caststone.org.
31. CSI - Construction Specifications Institute (The); www.csiresources.org.
32. CWC - Composite Wood Council; (See CPA).
33. DHA - Decorative Hardwoods Association; (Formerly: Hardwood Plywood & Veneer Association); www.decorativehardwoods.org.
34. EJMA - Expansion Joint Manufacturers Association, Inc.; www.ejma.org.
35. ETL - Intertek (See Intertek); www.intertek.com.
36. FM Approvals - FM Approvals LLC; www.fmapprovals.com.

37. FM Global - FM Global; (Formerly: FMG - FM Global); www.fmgglobal.com.
38. FRSA - Florida Roofing, Sheet Metal Contractors Association, Inc.; www.floridarooft.com.
39. FSA - Fluid Sealing Association; www.fluidsealing.com.
40. FSC - Forest Stewardship Council U.S.; www.fscus.org.
41. HPVA - Hardwood Plywood & Veneer Association; (See DHA).
42. ICC - International Code Council; www.iccsafe.org.
43. ICRI - International Concrete Repair Institute, Inc.; www.icri.org.
44. ILI - Indiana Limestone Institute of America, Inc.; www.iliai.com.
45. Intertek - Intertek Group; (Formerly: ETL SEMCO; Intertek Testing Service NA); www.intertek.com.
46. ISO - International Organization for Standardization; www.iso.org.
47. LMA - Laminating Materials Association; (See CPA).
48. MHI - Material Handling Industry; www.mhi.org.
49. MMPA - Moulding & Millwork Producers Association; www.wmmpa.com.
50. MPI - Master Painters Institute; www.paintinfo.com.
51. NAAMM - National Association of Architectural Metal Manufacturers; www.naamm.org.
52. NACE - NACE International; (National Association of Corrosion Engineers International); www.nace.org.
53. NCMA - National Concrete Masonry Association; www.ncma.org.
54. NECA - National Electrical Contractors Association; www.necanet.org.
55. NeLMA - Northeastern Lumber Manufacturers Association; www.nelma.org.
56. NFPA - National Fire Protection Association; www.nfpa.org.
57. NFPA - NFPA International; (See NFPA).
58. NLGA - National Lumber Grades Authority; www.nlga.org.
59. NRCA - National Roofing Contractors Association; www.nrca.net.
60. NRMCA - National Ready Mixed Concrete Association; www.nrmca.org.
61. NSF - NSF International; www.nsf.org.
62. NSI - National Stone Institute; (Formerly: Marble Institute of America); www.naturalstoneinstitute.org.
63. NSPE - National Society of Professional Engineers; www.nspe.org.
64. NSSGA - National Stone, Sand & Gravel Association; www.nssga.org.
65. NWRA - National Waste & Recycling Association; www.wasterecycling.org.
66. PDI - Plumbing & Drainage Institute; www.pdionline.org.
67. RCSC - Research Council on Structural Connections; www.boltcouncil.org.
68. SAE - SAE International; www.sae.org.
69. SEI/ASCE - Structural Engineering Institute/American Society of Civil Engineers; (See ASCE).
70. SMACNA - Sheet Metal and Air Conditioning Contractors' National Association; www.smacna.org.
71. SPIB - Southern Pine Inspection Bureau; www.spib.org.
72. SPRI - Single Ply Roofing Industry; www.spri.org.
73. TMS - The Masonry Society; www.masonrysociety.org.
74. TPI - Truss Plate Institute; www.tpinst.org.
75. UL - Underwriters Laboratories Inc.; www.ul.com.
76. UL LLC - UL LLC; www.ul.com.
77. UNI - Uni-Bell PVC Pipe Association; www.uni-bell.org.
78. WCLIB - West Coast Lumber Inspection Bureau; www.wclib.org.
79. WI - Woodwork Institute; www.wicnet.org.
80. WSRCA - Western States Roofing Contractors Association; www.wsrca.com.
81. WWPA - Western Wood Products Association; www.wwpa.org.

- B. Code Agencies: Where abbreviations and acronyms are used in Specifications or other Contract Documents, they shall mean the recognized name of the entities in the following list. This information is believed to be accurate as of the date of the Contract Documents.

1. ICC - International Code Council; www.iccsafe.org.
2. ICC-ES - ICC Evaluation Service, LLC; www.icc-es.org.

C. Federal Government Agencies: Where abbreviations and acronyms are used in Specifications or other Contract Documents, they shall mean the recognized name of the entities in the following list. Information is subject to change and is up to date as of the date of the Contract Documents.

1. EPA - Environmental Protection Agency; www.epa.gov.
2. OSHA - Occupational Safety & Health Administration; www.osha.gov.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 014200

SECTION 015000 - TEMPORARY FACILITIES AND CONTROLS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes requirements for temporary utilities, support facilities, and security and protection facilities.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 011000 "Summary" for work restrictions and limitations on utility interruptions.
 - 2. Section 012100 "Allowances" for allowance for metered use of temporary utilities.

1.3 USE CHARGES

- A. Installation, removal, and use charges for temporary facilities shall be included in the Contract Sum unless otherwise indicated. Allow other entities engaged in the Project to use temporary services and facilities without cost, including, but not limited to, Architect, occupants of Project, testing agencies, and authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Electric Power Service: Pay electric-power-service use charges for electricity used by all entities for construction operations.
- C. Electric Power Service from Existing System: Electric power from Owner's existing system is available for use with metering . Provide connections and extensions of services and metering as required for construction operations.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Site Utilization Plan: Show temporary facilities, temporary utility lines and connections, staging areas, construction site entrances, vehicle circulation, and parking areas for construction personnel.
- B. Implementation and Termination Schedule: Within 15 days of date established for commencement of the Work, submit schedule indicating implementation and termination dates of each temporary utility.
- C. Fire-Safety Program: Show compliance with requirements of NFPA 241 and authorities having jurisdiction. Indicate Contractor personnel responsible for management of fire-prevention program.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Tests and Inspections: Arrange for authorities having jurisdiction to test and inspect each temporary utility before use. Obtain required certifications and permits.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Portable Chain-Link Fencing: Minimum 2-inch, 0.148-inch- thick, galvanized-steel, chain-link fabric fencing; minimum 6 feet high with galvanized-steel pipe posts; minimum 2-3/8-inch- OD line posts and 2-7/8-inch- OD corner and pull posts, with 1-5/8-inch- OD top and bottom rails. Provide bases for supporting posts.

2.2 TEMPORARY FACILITIES

- A. Field Offices (if required): Prefabricated or mobile units with serviceable finishes, temperature controls, and foundations adequate for normal loading.
- B. Storage and Fabrication Sheds: Provide sheds sized, furnished, and equipped to accommodate materials and equipment for construction operations.
 - 1. Store combustible materials apart from building.

2.3 EQUIPMENT

- A. Fire Extinguishers: Portable, UL rated; with class and extinguishing agent as required by locations and classes of fire exposures.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 TEMPORARY FACILITIES, GENERAL

- A. Conservation: Coordinate construction and use of temporary facilities with consideration given to conservation of energy, water, and materials. Coordinate use of temporary utilities to minimize waste.

3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Locate facilities where they will serve Project adequately and result in minimum interference with performance of the Work. Relocate and modify facilities as required by progress of the Work.
 - 1. Locate facilities to limit site disturbance as specified in Section 011000 "Summary."

- B. Provide each facility ready for use when needed to avoid delay. Do not remove until facilities are no longer needed or are replaced by authorized use of completed permanent facilities.

3.3 TEMPORARY UTILITY INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install temporary service or connect to existing service.
 - 1. Arrange with utility company, Owner, and existing users for time when service can be interrupted, if necessary, to make connections for temporary services.
- B. Sanitary Facilities: Provide temporary toilets, wash facilities, safety shower and eyewash facilities, and drinking water for use of construction personnel. Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction for type, number, location, operation, and maintenance of fixtures and facilities.
 - 1. Use of Permanent Toilets: Use of Owner's existing or new toilet facilities is not permitted .
- C. Electric Power Service: Connect to Owner's existing electric power service. Maintain equipment in a condition acceptable to Owner.
- D. Lighting: Provide temporary lighting with local switching that provides adequate illumination for construction operations, observations, inspections, and traffic conditions.
 - 1. Install and operate temporary lighting that fulfills security and protection requirements without operating entire system.

3.4 SUPPORT FACILITIES INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with the following:
 - 1. Provide construction for temporary field offices, shops, and sheds located within construction area or within 30 feet of building lines that is noncombustible in accordance with ASTM E136. Comply with NFPA 241.
 - 2. Utilize designated area within existing building for temporary field offices.
 - 3. Maintain support facilities until Architect schedules Substantial Completion inspection. Remove before Substantial Completion. Personnel remaining after Substantial Completion will be permitted to use permanent facilities, under conditions acceptable to Owner.
- B. Storage and Staging: Use designated areas of Project site for storage and staging needs.
- C. Project Signs: Provide Project signs as indicated. Unauthorized signs are not permitted.
 - 1. Temporary Signs: Provide other signs as indicated and as required to inform public and individuals seeking entrance to Project.
 - a. Provide temporary, directional signs for construction personnel and visitors.
 - 2. Maintain and touch up signs, so they are legible at all times.
- D. Waste Disposal Facilities: Comply with requirements specified in Section 017419 "Construction Waste Management and Disposal."

- E. Lifts and Hoists: Provide facilities necessary for hoisting materials and personnel.
 - 1. Truck cranes and similar devices used for hoisting materials are considered "tools and equipment" and not temporary facilities.
- F. Existing Stair Usage: Use of Owner's existing stairs will be permitted, provided stairs are cleaned and maintained in a condition acceptable to Owner. At Substantial Completion, restore stairs to condition existing before initial use.
 - 1. Provide protective coverings, barriers, devices, signs, or other procedures to protect stairs and to maintain means of egress. If stairs become damaged, restore damaged areas, so no evidence remains of correction work.

3.5 SECURITY AND PROTECTION FACILITIES INSTALLATION

- A. Protection of Existing Facilities: Protect existing vegetation, equipment, structures, utilities, and other improvements at Project site and on adjacent properties, except those indicated to be removed or altered. Repair damage to existing facilities.
 - 1. Where access to adjacent properties is required in order to affect protection of existing facilities, obtain written permission from adjacent property owner to access property for that purpose.
- B. Environmental Protection: Provide protection, operate temporary facilities, and conduct construction as required to comply with environmental regulations and that minimize possible air, waterway, and subsoil contamination or pollution or other undesirable effects.
 - 1. Comply with work restrictions specified in Section 011000 "Summary."
- C. Site Enclosure Fence (as Needed): Before construction operations begin , furnish and install site enclosure fence in a manner that will prevent people from walking below or within areas of work.
 - 1. Extent of Fence: As required to enclose entire Project site or portion determined sufficient to accommodate construction operations .
 - 2. Maintain security by limiting number of keys and restricting distribution to authorized personnel. Furnish one set of keys to Owner.
- D. Temporary Enclosures: Provide temporary enclosures for protection of construction, in progress and completed, from exposure, foul weather, other construction operations, and similar activities. Provide temporary weathertight enclosure for building exterior.
- E. Temporary Fire Protection: Install and maintain temporary fire-protection facilities of types needed to protect against reasonably predictable and controllable fire losses. Comply with NFPA 241; manage fire-prevention program.
 - 1. Prohibit smoking in construction areas. Comply with additional limits on smoking specified in other Sections.
 - 2. Supervise welding operations, combustion-type temporary heating units, and similar sources of fire ignition in accordance with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.

3. Develop and supervise an overall fire-prevention and -protection program for personnel at Project site. Review needs with local fire department and establish procedures to be followed. Instruct personnel in methods and procedures. Post warnings and information.

3.6 MOISTURE AND MOLD CONTROL

- A. Moisture and Mold Protection: Protect stored materials and installed Work in accordance with Moisture and Mold Protection Plan.
- B. Exposed Construction Period: Before installation of weather barriers, when materials are subject to wetting and exposure and to airborne mold spores, protect as follows:
 1. Protect porous materials from water damage.
 2. Protect stored and installed material from flowing or standing water.
 3. Keep porous and organic materials from coming into prolonged contact with concrete.
 4. Remove standing water from decks.
 5. Keep deck openings covered or dammed.
- C. Partially Enclosed Construction Period: After installation of weather barriers but before full enclosure and conditioning of building, when installed materials are still subject to infiltration of moisture and ambient mold spores, protect as follows:
 1. Do not load or install drywall or other porous materials or components, or items with high organic content, into partially enclosed building.
 2. Keep interior spaces reasonably clean and protected from water damage.
 3. Periodically collect and remove waste containing cellulose or other organic matter.
 4. Discard or replace water-damaged material.
 5. Do not install material that is wet.
 6. Discard and replace stored or installed material that begins to grow mold.

3.7 OPERATION, TERMINATION, AND REMOVAL

- A. Supervision: Enforce strict discipline in use of temporary facilities. To minimize waste and abuse, limit availability of temporary facilities to essential and intended uses.
- B. Maintenance: Maintain facilities in good operating condition until removal.
- C. Temporary Facility Changeover: Do not change over from using temporary security and protection facilities to permanent facilities until Substantial Completion.
- D. Termination and Removal: Remove each temporary facility when need for its service has ended, when it has been replaced by authorized use of a permanent facility, or no later than Substantial Completion. Complete or, if necessary, restore permanent construction that may have been delayed because of interference with temporary facility. Repair damaged Work, clean exposed surfaces, and replace construction that cannot be satisfactorily repaired.
 1. Materials and facilities that constitute temporary facilities are property of Contractor. Owner reserves right to take possession of Project identification signs.
 2. At Substantial Completion, repair, renovate, and clean permanent facilities used during construction period. Comply with final cleaning requirements specified in Section 017700 "Closeout Procedures."

END OF SECTION 015000

SECTION 016000 - PRODUCT REQUIREMENTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for selection of products for use in Project; product delivery, storage, and handling; manufacturers' standard warranties on products; special warranties; and comparable products.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 011000 "Summary" for Contractor requirements related to Owner-furnished products.
 - 2. Section 012100 "Allowances" for products selected under an allowance.
 - 3. Section 012500 "Substitution Procedures" for requests for substitutions.
 - 4. Section 014200 "References" for applicable industry standards for products specified.
 - 5. Section 01770 "Closeout Procedures" for submitting warranties.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Products: Items obtained for incorporating into the Work, whether purchased for Project or taken from previously purchased stock. The term "product" includes the terms "material," "equipment," "system," and terms of similar intent.
 - 1. Named Products: Items identified by manufacturer's product name, including make or model number or other designation shown or listed in manufacturer's published product literature that is current as of date of the Contract Documents.
 - 2. New Products: Items that have not previously been incorporated into another project or facility. Salvaged items or items reused from other projects are not considered new products. Items that are manufactured or fabricated to include recycled content materials are considered new products, unless indicated otherwise.
 - 3. Comparable Product: Product by named manufacturer that is demonstrated and approved through the comparable product submittal process described in Part 2 "Comparable Products" Article, to have the indicated qualities related to type, function, dimension, in-service performance, physical properties, appearance, and other characteristics that equal or exceed those of specified product.
- B. Basis-of-Design Product Specification: A specification in which a single manufacturer's product is named and accompanied by the words "basis-of-design product," including make or model number or other designation. Published attributes and characteristics of basis-of-design product establish salient characteristics of products.

1. Evaluation of Comparable Products: In addition to the basis-of-design product description, product attributes and characteristics may be listed to establish the significant qualities related to type, function, in-service performance and physical properties, weight, dimension, durability, visual characteristics, and other special features and requirements for purposes of evaluating comparable products of additional manufacturers named in the specification. Manufacturer's published attributes and characteristics of basis-of-design product also establish salient characteristics of products for purposes of evaluating comparable products.
- C. Subject to Compliance with Requirements: Where the phrase "Subject to compliance with requirements" introduces a product selection procedure in an individual Specification Section, provide products qualified under the specified product procedure. In the event that a named product or product by a named manufacturer does not meet the other requirements of the specifications, select another named product or product from another named manufacturer that does meet the requirements of the specifications; submit a comparable product request or substitution request, if applicable.
- D. Comparable Product Request Submittal: An action submittal requesting consideration of a comparable product, including the following information:
 1. Identification of basis-of-design product or fabrication or installation method to be replaced, including Specification Section number and title and Drawing numbers and titles.
 2. Data indicating compliance with the requirements specified in Part 2 "Comparable Products" Article.
- E. Basis-of-Design Product Specification Submittal: An action submittal complying with requirements in Section 013300 "Submittal Procedures."
- F. Substitution: Refer to Section 012500 "Substitution Procedures" for definition and limitations on substitutions.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Compatibility of Options: If Contractor is given option of selecting between two or more products for use on Project, select product compatible with products previously selected, even if previously selected products were also options.
- B. Identification of Products: Except for required labels and operating data, do not attach or imprint manufacturer or product names or trademarks on exposed surfaces of products or equipment that will be exposed to view in occupied spaces or on the exterior.
 1. Labels: Locate required product labels and stamps on a concealed surface, or, where required for observation following installation, on a visually accessible surface that is not conspicuous.

1.5 COORDINATION

- A. Modify or adjust affected work as necessary to integrate work of approved comparable products and approved substitutions.

1.6 PRODUCT DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver, store, and handle products, using means and methods that will prevent damage, deterioration, and loss, including theft and vandalism. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Delivery and Handling:
 - 1. Schedule delivery to minimize long-term storage at Project site and to prevent overcrowding of construction spaces.
 - 2. Coordinate delivery with installation time to ensure minimum holding time for items that are flammable, hazardous, easily damaged, or sensitive to deterioration, theft, and other losses.
 - 3. Deliver products to Project site in an undamaged condition in manufacturer's original sealed container or other packaging system, complete with labels and instructions for handling, storing, unpacking, protecting, and installing.
 - 4. Inspect products on delivery to determine compliance with the Contract Documents and that products are undamaged and properly protected.
- C. Storage:
 - 1. Provide a secure location and enclosure at Project site for storage of materials and equipment.
 - 2. Store materials in a manner that will not endanger Project structure.
 - 3. Store products that are subject to damage by the elements under cover in a weathertight enclosure above ground, with ventilation adequate to prevent condensation and with adequate protection from wind.
 - 4. Comply with product manufacturer's written instructions for temperature, humidity, ventilation, and weather-protection requirements for storage.
 - 5. Protect stored products from damage and liquids from freezing.

1.7 PRODUCT WARRANTIES

- A. Warranties specified in other Sections shall be in addition to, and run concurrent with, other warranties required by the Contract Documents. Manufacturer's disclaimers and limitations on product warranties do not relieve Contractor of obligations under requirements of the Contract Documents.
 - 1. Manufacturer's Warranty: Written standard warranty form furnished by individual manufacturer for a particular product and issued in the name of the Owner or endorsed by manufacturer to Owner.
 - 2. Special Warranty: Written warranty required by the Contract Documents to provide specific rights for Owner and issued in the name of the Owner or endorsed by manufacturer to Owner.
- B. Special Warranties: Prepare a written document that contains appropriate terms and identification, ready for execution.
 - 1. Manufacturer's Standard Form: Modified to include Project-specific information and properly executed.
 - 2. Specified Form: When specified forms are included in the Project Manual, prepare a written document, using indicated form properly executed.

3. See other Sections for specific content requirements and particular requirements for submitting special warranties.

C. Submittal Time: Comply with requirements in Section 017700 "Closeout Procedures."

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PRODUCT SELECTION PROCEDURES

A. General Product Requirements: Provide products that comply with the Contract Documents, are undamaged and, unless otherwise indicated, are new at time of installation.

1. Provide products complete with accessories, trim, finish, fasteners, and other items needed for a complete installation and indicated use and effect.
2. Standard Products: If available, and unless custom products or nonstandard options are specified, provide standard products of types that have been produced and used successfully in similar situations on other projects.
3. Owner reserves the right to limit selection to products with warranties meeting requirements of the Contract Documents.
4. Where products are accompanied by the term "as selected," Architect will make selection.
5. Descriptive, performance, and reference standard requirements in the Specifications establish salient characteristics of products.
6. Or Equal: For products specified by name and accompanied by the term "or equal," "or approved equal," or "or approved," comply with requirements in "Comparable Products" Article to obtain approval for use of an unnamed product.
 - a. Submit additional documentation required by Architect in order to establish equivalency of proposed products. Unless otherwise indicated, evaluation of "or equal" product status is by the Architect, whose determination is final.

B. Product Selection Procedures:

1. Non-Limited List of Products: Where Specifications include a list of names of both available manufacturers and products, provide one of the products listed or an unnamed product that complies with requirements.
 - a. Non-limited list of products is indicated by the phrase "Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated in the Work include, but are not limited to, the following."
 - b. Provision of an unnamed product is not considered a substitution, if the product complies with requirements.
2. Non-Limited List of Manufacturers: Where Specifications include a list of available manufacturers, provide a product by one of the manufacturers listed or a product by an unnamed manufacturer that complies with requirements.
 - a. Non-limited list of manufacturers is indicated by the phrase "Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers whose products may be incorporated in the Work include, but are not limited to, the following."
 - b. Provision of products of an unnamed manufacturer is not considered a substitution, if the product complies with requirements.
3. Basis-of-Design Product: Where Specifications name a product, or refer to a product indicated on Drawings, and include a list of manufacturers, provide the specified or indicated product or a comparable product by one of the other named manufacturers. Drawings and Specifications may additionally indicate sizes, profiles, dimensions, and

other characteristics that are based on the product named. Comply with requirements in "Comparable Products" Article for consideration of an unnamed product by one of the other named manufacturers.

a. For approval of products by unnamed manufacturers, comply with requirements in Section 012500 "Substitution Procedures" for substitutions for convenience.

- C. Visual Selection Specification: Where Specifications include the phrase "as selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range" or a similar phrase, select a product that complies with requirements. Architect will select color, gloss, pattern, density, or texture from manufacturer's product line that includes both standard and premium items.

2.2 COMPARABLE PRODUCTS

- A. Conditions for Consideration of Comparable Products: Architect will consider Contractor's request for comparable product when the following conditions are satisfied. If the following conditions are not satisfied, Architect may return requests without action, except to record noncompliance with the following requirements:

1. Evidence that proposed product does not require revisions to the Contract Documents, is consistent with the Contract Documents, will produce the indicated results, and is compatible with other portions of the Work.
2. Detailed comparison of significant qualities of proposed product with those of the named basis-of-design product. Significant product qualities include attributes, such as type, function, in-service performance and physical properties, weight, dimension, durability, visual characteristics, and other specific features and requirements.
3. Evidence that proposed product provides specified warranty.
4. Samples, if requested.

- B. Architect's Action on Comparable Products Submittal: If necessary, Architect will request additional information or documentation for evaluation, as specified in Section 013300 "Submittal Procedures."

1. Form of Approval of Submittal: As specified in Section 013300 "Submittal Procedures."
2. Use product specified if Architect does not issue a decision on use of a comparable product request within time allocated.

- C. Submittal Requirements, Two-Step Process: Approval by the Architect of Contractor's request for use of comparable product is not intended to satisfy other submittal requirements. Comply with specified submittal requirements.

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 016000

SECTION 017300 - EXECUTION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes general administrative and procedural requirements governing execution of the Work, including, but not limited to, the following:
 - 1. Installation of the Work.
 - 2. Cutting and patching.
 - 3. Protection of installed construction.
 - 4. Correction of the Work.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 013300 "Submittal Procedures" for submitting surveys.
 - 2. Section 017700 "Closeout Procedures" for submitting final property survey with Project Record Documents, recording of Owner-accepted deviations from indicated lines and levels, replacing defective work, and final cleaning.
 - 3. Section 024119 "Selective Demolition" for demolition and removal of selected portions of the building.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Cutting: Removal of in-place construction necessary to permit installation or performance of subsequent work.
- B. Patching: Fitting and repair work required to restore construction to original conditions after installation of subsequent work.

1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Cutting and Patching Conference: Conduct conference at Project site during Pre-Construction or Progress Meetings.
 - 1. Prior to commencing work requiring cutting and patching, review extent of cutting and patching anticipated and examine procedures for ensuring satisfactory result from cutting and patching work. Inform Architect of scheduled meeting. Require representatives of each entity directly concerned with cutting and patching to attend, including the following:
 - a. Contractor's superintendent.
 - b. Trade supervisor responsible for cutting operations.
 - c. Trade supervisor(s) responsible for patching of each type of substrate.
 - 2. Review areas of potential interference and conflict. Coordinate procedures and resolve potential conflicts before proceeding.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Cutting and Patching: Comply with requirements for and limitations on cutting and patching of construction elements.
1. Structural Elements: When cutting and patching structural elements, or when encountering the need for cutting and patching of elements whose structural function is not known, notify Architect of locations and details of cutting and await directions from Architect before proceeding. Shore, brace, and support structural elements during cutting and patching. Do not cut and patch structural elements in a manner that could change their load-carrying capacity or increase deflection.
 2. Operational Elements: Do not cut and patch operating elements and related components in a manner that results in reducing their capacity to perform as intended or that results in increased maintenance or decreased operational life or safety. Operational elements include the following:
 - a. Plumbing piping systems.
 - b. Fire-detection and -alarm systems.
 - c. Electrical wiring systems.
 3. Other Construction Elements: Do not cut and patch other construction elements or components in a manner that could change their load-carrying capacity, that results in reducing their capacity to perform as intended, or that results in increased maintenance or decreased operational life or safety. Other construction elements include but are not limited to the following:
 - a. Water, moisture, or vapor barriers.
 - b. Membranes and flashings.
 - c. Sprayed fire-resistive material.
 - d. Piping, ductwork, vessels, and equipment.
 4. Visual Elements: Do not cut and patch construction in a manner that results in visual evidence of cutting and patching. Do not cut and patch exposed construction in a manner that would, in Architect's opinion, reduce the building's aesthetic qualities. Remove and replace construction that has been cut and patched in a visually unsatisfactory manner.
- B. Manufacturer's Installation Instructions: Obtain and maintain on-site manufacturer's written recommendations and instructions for installation of specified products and equipment.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Comply with requirements specified in other Sections.
- B. In-Place Materials: Use materials for patching identical to in-place materials. For exposed surfaces, use materials that visually match in-place adjacent surfaces to the fullest extent possible.
1. If identical materials are unavailable or cannot be used, use materials that, when installed, will provide a match acceptable to Architect for the visual and functional performance of in-place materials. Use materials that are not considered hazardous.

- C. Cleaning Agents: Use cleaning materials and agents recommended by manufacturer or fabricator of the surface to be cleaned. Do not use cleaning agents that are potentially hazardous to health or property or that might damage finished surfaces.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examination and Acceptance of Conditions: Before proceeding with each component of the Work, examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer or Applicator present where indicated, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance. Record observations.
 - 1. Examine walls, floors, and roofs for suitable conditions where products and systems are to be installed.
 - 2. Verify compatibility with and suitability of substrates, including compatibility with existing finishes or primers.
- B. Written Report: Where a written report listing conditions detrimental to performance of the Work is required by other Sections, include the following:
 - 1. Description of the Work, including Specification Section number and paragraph, and Drawing sheet number and detail, where applicable.
 - 2. List of detrimental conditions, including substrates.
 - 3. List of unacceptable installation tolerances.
 - 4. Recommended corrections.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected. Proceeding with the Work indicates acceptance of surfaces and conditions.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Existing Utility Information: Furnish information to Architect and Owner that is necessary to adjust, move, or relocate existing utility structures, utility poles, lines, services, or other utility appurtenances located in or affected by construction. Coordinate with authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Field Measurements: Take field measurements as required to fit the Work properly. Recheck measurements before installing each product. Where portions of the Work are indicated to fit to other construction, verify dimensions of other construction by field measurements before fabrication. Coordinate fabrication schedule with construction progress to avoid delaying the Work.
- C. Space Requirements: Verify space requirements and dimensions of items shown diagrammatically on Drawings.
- D. Review of Contract Documents and Field Conditions: Immediately on discovery of the need for clarification of the Contract Documents, submit a request for information to Architect in accordance with requirements in Section 013100 "Project Management and Coordination."

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Locate the Work and components of the Work accurately, in correct alignment and elevation, as indicated.
 - 1. Make vertical work plumb, and make horizontal work level.
- B. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations for installing products in applications indicated.
- C. Install products at the time and under conditions that will ensure satisfactory results as judged by Architect. Maintain conditions required for product performance until Substantial Completion.
- D. Conduct construction operations, so no part of the Work is subjected to damaging operations or loading in excess of that expected during normal conditions of occupancy of type expected for Project.
- E. Sequence the Work and allow adequate clearances to accommodate movement of construction items on-site and placement in permanent locations.
- F. Tools and Equipment: Select tools or equipment that minimize production of excessive noise levels.
- G. Templates: Obtain and distribute to the parties involved templates for Work specified to be factory prepared and field installed. Check Shop Drawings of other portions of the Work to confirm that adequate provisions are made for locating and installing products to comply with indicated requirements.
- H. Attachment: Provide blocking and attachment plates and anchors and fasteners of adequate size and number to securely anchor each component in place, accurately located and aligned with other portions of the Work. Where size and type of attachments are not indicated, verify size and type required for load conditions with manufacturer.
 - 1. Allow for building movement, including thermal expansion and contraction.
 - 2. Coordinate installation of anchorages. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and directions for installing anchorages, including sleeves, concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and items with integral anchors, that are to be embedded in concrete or masonry. Deliver such items to Project site in time for installation.
- I. Joints: Make joints of uniform width. Where joint locations in exposed Work are not indicated, arrange joints for the best visual effect, as judged by Architect. Fit exposed connections together to form hairline joints.

3.4 CUTTING AND PATCHING

- A. General: Employ skilled workers to perform cutting and patching. Proceed with cutting and patching at the earliest feasible time, and complete without delay.
 - 1. Cut in-place construction to provide for installation of other components or performance of other construction, and subsequently patch as required to restore surfaces to their original condition.

- B. Temporary Support: Provide temporary support of Work to be cut.
- C. Protection: Protect in-place construction during cutting and patching to prevent damage. Provide protection from adverse weather conditions for portions of Project that might be exposed during cutting and patching operations.
- D. Existing Utility Services and Mechanical/Electrical Systems: Where existing services/systems are required to be removed, relocated, or abandoned, bypass such services/systems before cutting to minimize interruption to occupied areas.
- E. Cutting: Cut in-place construction by sawing, drilling, breaking, chipping, grinding, and similar operations, including excavation, using methods least likely to damage elements retained or adjoining construction. If possible, review proposed procedures with original Installer; comply with original Installer's written recommendations.
 - 1. In general, use hand or small power tools designed for sawing and grinding, not hammering and chopping. Cut holes and slots neatly to minimum size required, and with minimum disturbance of adjacent surfaces. Temporarily cover openings when not in use.
 - 2. Finished Surfaces: Cut or drill from the exposed or finished side into concealed surfaces.
 - 3. Concrete and Masonry: Cut using a cutting machine, such as an abrasive saw or a diamond-core drill.
 - 4. Mechanical and Electrical Services: Cut off pipe or conduit in walls or partitions to be removed. Cap, valve, or plug and seal remaining portion of pipe or conduit to prevent entrance of moisture or other foreign matter after cutting.
 - 5. Proceed with patching after construction operations requiring cutting are complete.
- F. Patching: Patch construction by filling, repairing, refinishing, closing up, and similar operations following performance of other Work. Patch with durable seams that are as invisible as practicable, as judged by Architect. Provide materials and comply with installation requirements specified in other Sections, where applicable.
 - 1. Inspection: Where feasible, test and inspect patched areas after completion to demonstrate physical integrity of installation.
 - 2. Exposed Finishes: Restore exposed finishes of patched areas and extend finish restoration into retained adjoining construction in a manner that will eliminate evidence of patching and refinishing.
 - 3. Exterior Building Enclosure: Patch components in a manner that restores enclosure to a weathertight condition and ensures thermal and moisture integrity of building enclosure.
- G. Cleaning: Clean areas and spaces where cutting and patching are performed. Remove paint, mortar, oils, putty, and similar materials from adjacent finished surfaces.

3.5 PROTECTION OF INSTALLED CONSTRUCTION

- A. Provide final protection and maintain conditions that ensure installed Work is without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.
- B. Protection of Existing Items: Provide protection and ensure that existing items to remain undisturbed by construction are maintained in condition that existed at commencement of the Work.
- C. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for temperature and relative humidity.

3.6 CORRECTION OF THE WORK

- A. Repair or remove and replace damaged, defective, or nonconforming Work. Restore damaged substrates and finishes.
- B. Repair Work previously completed and subsequently damaged during construction period. Repair to like-new condition.
- C. Restore permanent facilities used during construction to their specified condition.
- D. Remove and replace damaged surfaces that are exposed to view if surfaces cannot be repaired without visible evidence of repair.
- E. Repair components that do not operate properly. Remove and replace operating components that cannot be repaired.
- F. Remove and replace chipped, scratched, and broken glass or reflective surfaces.

END OF SECTION 017300

SECTION 017419 - CONSTRUCTION WASTE MANAGEMENT AND DISPOSAL

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for the following:
 - 1. Salvaging nonhazardous demolition waste.
 - 2. Disposing of nonhazardous demolition and construction waste.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Construction Waste: Building, structure, and site improvement materials and other solid waste resulting from construction, remodeling, renovation, or repair operations. Construction waste includes packaging.
- B. Demolition Waste: Building, structure, and site improvement materials resulting from demolition operations.
- C. Disposal: Removal of demolition or construction waste and subsequent salvage, sale, recycling, or deposit in landfill, incinerator acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, or designated spoil areas on Owner's property.
- D. Recycle: Recovery of demolition or construction waste for subsequent processing in preparation for reuse.
- E. Salvage: Recovery of demolition or construction waste and subsequent sale or reuse in another facility.
- F. Salvage and Reuse: Recovery of demolition or construction waste and subsequent incorporation into the Work.

1.4 MATERIALS OWNERSHIP

- A. Unless otherwise indicated, demolition and construction waste becomes property of Contractor.
- B. Historic items, relics, antiques, and similar objects including, but not limited to, cornerstones and their contents, commemorative plaques and tablets, and other items of interest or value to Owner that may be uncovered during demolition remain the property of Owner.
 - 1. Carefully salvage in a manner to prevent damage and promptly return to Owner.

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Waste Management Plan: Submit plan within 30 days of date established for the Notice of Award.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with transportation and disposal regulations of authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Waste Management Conference(s): Conduct conference(s) at Project site to comply with requirements in Section 013100 "Project Management and Coordination." Review methods and procedures related to waste management including, but not limited to, the following:
 - 1. Review and discuss waste management plan including responsibilities of each contractor and waste management coordinator.
 - 2. Review and finalize procedures for materials separation and verify availability of containers and bins needed to avoid delays.
 - 3. Review procedures for periodic waste collection and transportation to recycling and disposal facilities.
 - 4. Review waste management requirements for each trade.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PLAN IMPLEMENTATION

- A. General: Implement approved waste management plan. Provide handling, containers, storage, signage, transportation, and other items as required to implement waste management plan during the entire duration of the Contract.
 - 1. Comply with operation, termination, and removal requirements in Section 015000 "Temporary Facilities and Controls."
- B. Training: Train workers, subcontractors, and suppliers on proper waste management procedures, as appropriate for the Work.
 - 1. Distribute waste management plan to everyone concerned within three days of submittal return.
 - 2. Distribute waste management plan to entities when they first begin work on-site. Review plan procedures and locations established for salvage, recycling, and disposal.
- C. Site Access and Temporary Controls: Conduct waste management operations to ensure minimum interference with roads, streets, walks, walkways, and other adjacent occupied and used facilities.
 - 1. Comply with Section 015000 "Temporary Facilities and Controls" for controlling dust and dirt, environmental protection, and noise control.

3.2 SALVAGING DEMOLITION WASTE

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 024119 "Selective Demolition" for salvaging demolition waste.
- B. Salvaged Items for Sale and Donation : Not permitted on Project site.

3.3 DISPOSAL OF WASTE

- A. General: Except for items or materials to be salvaged or recycled, remove waste materials from Project site and legally dispose of them in a landfill or incinerator acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 1. Except as otherwise specified, do not allow waste materials that are to be disposed of accumulate on-site.
 - 2. Remove and transport debris in a manner that will prevent spillage on adjacent surfaces and areas.
- B. Burning: Do not burn waste materials.

END OF SECTION 017419

SECTION 017700 - CLOSEOUT PROCEDURES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for Contract closeout, including, but not limited to, the following:
 - 1. Substantial Completion procedures.
 - 2. Final completion procedures.
 - 3. Warranties.
 - 4. Final cleaning.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 012900 "Payment Procedures" for requirements for Applications for Payment for Substantial Completion and Final Completion.
 - 2. Section 017839 "Project Record Documents" for submitting Record Drawings, Record Specifications, and Record Product Data.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. List of Incomplete Items: Contractor-prepared list of items to be completed or corrected, prepared for the Architect's use prior to Architect's inspection, to determine if the Work is substantially complete.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Contractor's List of Incomplete Items: Initial submittal at Substantial Completion.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Certificate of Insurance: For continuing coverage.

1.6 SUBSTANTIAL COMPLETION PROCEDURES

- A. Contractor's List of Incomplete Items: Prepare and submit a list of items to be completed and corrected (Contractor's "punch list"), indicating the value of each item on the list and reasons why the Work is incomplete.

- B. Submittals Prior to Substantial Completion: Complete the following a minimum of 10 days prior to requesting inspection for determining date of Substantial Completion. List items below that are incomplete at time of request.
1. Submit closeout submittals specified in other Division 01 Sections, including Project Record Documents.
 2. Submit closeout submittals specified in individual Sections, including specific warranties, and similar documents.
 3. Submit maintenance material submittals specified in individual Sections, including tools, spare parts, extra materials, and similar items, and deliver to location designated by Owner . Label with manufacturer's name and model number.
- C. Procedures Prior to Substantial Completion: Complete the following a minimum of 10 days prior to requesting inspection for determining date of Substantial Completion. List items below that are incomplete at time of request.
1. Advise Owner of pending insurance changeover requirements.
 2. Make final changeover of permanent locks and deliver keys to Owner. Advise Owner's personnel of changeover in security provisions.
 3. Terminate and remove temporary facilities from Project site, along with mockups, construction tools, and similar elements.
 4. Complete final cleaning requirements.
 5. Touch up paint and otherwise repair and restore marred exposed finishes to eliminate visual defects.
- D. Inspection: Submit a written request for inspection to determine Substantial Completion a minimum of 10 days prior to date the Work will be completed and ready for final inspection and tests. On receipt of request, Architect will either proceed with inspection or notify Contractor of unfulfilled requirements. Architect will prepare the Certificate of Substantial Completion after inspection or will notify Contractor of items, either on Contractor's list or additional items identified by Architect, that must be completed or corrected before certificate will be issued.
1. Request reinspection when the Work identified in previous inspections as incomplete is completed or corrected.
 2. Results of completed inspection will form the basis of requirements for Final Completion.

1.7 FINAL COMPLETION PROCEDURES

- A. Submittals Prior to Final Completion: Before requesting final inspection for determining Final Completion, complete the following:
1. Submit a final Application for Payment in accordance with Section 012900 "Payment Procedures."
 2. Certified List of Incomplete Items: Submit certified copy of Architect's Substantial Completion inspection list of items to be completed or corrected (punch list), endorsed and dated by Architect. Certified copy of the list shall state that each item has been completed or otherwise resolved for acceptance.
 3. Certificate of Insurance: Submit evidence of final, continuing insurance coverage complying with insurance requirements.
- B. Inspection: Submit a written request for final inspection to determine acceptance a minimum of 10 days prior to date the Work will be completed and ready for final inspection and tests. On receipt of request, Architect will either proceed with inspection or notify Contractor of unfulfilled

requirements. Architect will prepare a final Certificate for Payment after inspection or will notify Contractor of construction that must be completed or corrected before certificate will be issued.

1. Request reinspection when the Work identified in previous inspections as incomplete is completed or corrected.

1.8 LIST OF INCOMPLETE ITEMS

A. Organization of List: Include name and identification of each space and area affected by construction operations for incomplete items and items needing correction including, if necessary, areas disturbed by Contractor that are outside the limits of construction.

1. Organize items applying to each space by major element.
2. Include the following information at the top of each page:
 - a. Project name.
 - b. Date.
 - c. Name of Architect.
 - d. Name of Contractor.
 - e. Page number.
3. Submit list of incomplete items in either of the following formats:
 - a. MS Excel Electronic File: Architect will return annotated file.
 - b. PDF Electronic File: Architect will return annotated file.

1.9 SUBMITTAL OF PROJECT WARRANTIES

- A. Time of Submittal: Submit written warranties on request of Architect for designated portions of the Work where warranties are indicated to commence on dates other than date of Substantial Completion, or when delay in submittal of warranties might limit Owner's rights under warranty.
- B. Organize warranty documents into an orderly sequence based on the table of contents of Project Manual.
- C. Warranty Electronic File: Provide warranties and bonds in PDF format. Assemble complete warranty and bond submittal package into a single electronic PDF file with bookmarks enabling navigation to each item. Provide bookmarked table of contents at beginning of document.
1. Submit by email to Architect.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Cleaning Agents: Use cleaning materials and agents recommended by manufacturer or fabricator of the surface to be cleaned. Do not use cleaning agents that are potentially hazardous to health or property or that might damage finished surfaces.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 FINAL CLEANING

- A. General: Perform final cleaning. Conduct cleaning and waste-removal operations to comply with local laws and ordinances and Federal and local environmental and antipollution regulations.
- B. Construction Waste Disposal: Comply with waste-disposal requirements in Section 017419 "Construction Waste Management and Disposal."

3.2 REPAIR OF THE WORK

- A. Complete repair and restoration operations required by Section 017300 "Execution" before requesting inspection for determination of Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION 017700

SECTION 017839 - PROJECT RECORD DOCUMENTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for Project Record Documents, including the following:
 - 1. Record Drawings.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 017700 "Closeout Procedures" for general closeout procedures.

1.3 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Record Drawings: Comply with the following:
 - 1. Number of Copies: Submit one set(s) of marked-up record prints.

1.4 RECORD DRAWINGS

- A. Record Prints: Maintain one set of marked-up paper copies of the Contract Drawings and Shop Drawings, incorporating new and revised drawings as modifications are issued.
 - 1. Preparation: Mark record prints to show the actual installation, where installation varies from that shown originally. Require individual or entity who obtained record data, whether individual or entity is Installer, subcontractor, or similar entity, to provide information for preparation of corresponding marked-up record prints.
 - a. Give particular attention to information on concealed elements that would be difficult to identify or measure and record later.
 - b. Accurately record information in an acceptable drawing technique.
 - c. Record data as soon as possible after obtaining it.
 - d. Record and check the markup before enclosing concealed installations.
 - e. Cross-reference record prints to corresponding photographic documentation.
 - 2. Content: Types of items requiring marking include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Dimensional changes to Drawings.
 - b. Revisions to details shown on Drawings.
 - c. Changes made by Change Order or Construction Change Directive.
 - d. Changes made following Architect's written orders.
 - e. Details not on the original Contract Drawings.

- f. Field records for variable and concealed conditions.
 - g. Record information on the Work that is shown only schematically.
 3. Mark the Contract Drawings and Shop Drawings completely and accurately. Use personnel proficient at recording graphic information in production of marked-up record prints.
 4. Mark record prints with erasable, red-colored pencil. Use other colors to distinguish between changes for different categories of the Work at same location.
 5. Mark important additional information that was either shown schematically or omitted from original Drawings.
 6. Note Construction Change Directive numbers, alternate numbers, Change Order numbers, and similar identification, where applicable.
- B. Format: Identify and date each Record Drawing; include the designation "PROJECT RECORD DRAWING" in a prominent location.
 1. Record Prints: Organize record prints into manageable sets. Bind each set with durable paper cover sheets. Include identification on cover sheets.
 2. Format: Annotated PDF electronic file with comment function enabled.
 3. Identification: As follows:
 - a. Project name.
 - b. Date.
 - c. Designation "PROJECT RECORD DRAWINGS."
 - d. Name of Architect.
 - e. Name of Contractor.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 017839

SECTION 024119 - SELECTIVE DEMOLITION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Demolition and removal of selected portions of building or structure.
2. Salvage of existing items to be retained and reused, or stored for record.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 011000 "Summary" for restrictions on use of the premises, Owner-occupancy requirements, and phasing requirements.
2. Section 017300 "Execution" for cutting and patching procedures.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Remove: Detach items from existing construction and dispose of them off-site unless indicated to be salvaged or reinstalled.
- B. Remove and Salvage: Detach items from existing construction, in a manner to prevent damage, and deliver to Owner for storage.
- C. Remove and Reinstall: Detach items from existing construction, in a manner to prevent damage, prepare for reuse, and reinstall where indicated.
- D. Existing to Remain: Leave existing items that are not to be removed and that are not otherwise indicated to be salvaged or reinstalled.
- E. Dismantle: To remove by disassembling or detaching an item from a surface, using gentle methods and equipment to prevent damage to the item and surfaces; disposing of items unless indicated to be salvaged or reinstalled.

1.3 MATERIALS OWNERSHIP

- A. Unless otherwise indicated, demolition waste becomes property of Contractor.
- B. Historic items, relics, antiques, and similar objects including, but not limited to, cornerstones and their contents, commemorative plaques and tablets, and other items of interest or value to Owner that may be uncovered during demolition remain the property of Owner.
1. Carefully salvage in a manner to prevent damage and promptly return to Owner.

1.4 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Predemolition Conference: Conduct conference at Project site .
1. Inspect and discuss condition of construction to be selectively demolished.
 2. Review structural load limitations of existing structure.
 3. Review and finalize selective demolition schedule and verify availability of materials, demolition personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
 4. Review requirements of work performed by other trades that rely on substrates exposed by selective demolition operations.
 5. Review areas where existing construction is to remain and requires protection.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Proposed Protection Measures: Submit report, including Drawings, that indicates the measures proposed for protecting individuals and property . Indicate proposed locations and construction of barriers.
- B. Schedule of Selective Demolition Activities: Indicate the following:
1. Detailed sequence of selective demolition and removal work, with starting and ending dates for each activity. Ensure Owner's adjacent site operations are uninterrupted.
 2. Use of stairs.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Inventory: Submit a list of items that have been removed and salvaged.

1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Conditions existing at time of inspection for bidding purpose will be maintained by Owner as far as practical.
1. Before selective demolition, Owner will remove the following items:
 - a. Any debris in the pathways to and from the Areas of Work .
- B. Notify Architect of discrepancies between existing conditions and Drawings before proceeding with selective demolition.
- C. Hazardous Materials: It is unknown if hazardous materials will be encountered in the Work.
1. If suspected hazardous materials are encountered, do not disturb; immediately notify Architect and Owner. Hazardous materials will be removed by Owner under a separate contract.
- D. Lead-containing Materials: It is presumed that lead is present in all existing paint.
1. Contractor is responsible for lead-safe work practices during demolition of or tie-into lead-coated materials.

- E. Storage or sale of removed items or materials on-site is not permitted.
- F. Utility Service: Maintain existing utilities indicated to remain in service and protect them against damage during selective demolition operations.

1.8 COORDINATION

- A. Arrange selective demolition schedule so as not to interfere with Owner's adjacent site operations.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with governing EPA notification regulations before beginning selective demolition. Comply with hauling and disposal regulations of authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Standards: Comply with ANSI/ASSP A10.6 and NFPA 241.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Survey of Existing Conditions: Record existing conditions by use of preconstruction photographs or video .
 - 1. Inventory and record the condition of items to be removed and salvaged.
 - 2. Before selective demolition or removal of existing building elements that will be reproduced or duplicated in final Work, make permanent record of measurements, materials, and construction details required to make exact reproduction.

3.2 PROTECTION

- A. Temporary Protection: Provide temporary barricades and other protection required to prevent injury to people and damage to adjacent buildings and facilities to remain.
 - 1. Provide protection to ensure safe passage of people around selective demolition area and to and from entries of building.
 - 2. Provide temporary weather protection, during interval between selective demolition of existing construction on exterior surfaces and new construction, to prevent water leakage and damage to structure and interior areas.
 - 3. Protect walls, ceilings, floors, and other existing finish work that are to remain or that are exposed during selective demolition operations - in or directly below Area of Work.
- B. Temporary Shoring: Design, provide, and maintain shoring, bracing, and structural supports as required to preserve stability and prevent movement, settlement, or collapse of construction and

finishes to remain, and to prevent unexpected or uncontrolled movement or collapse of construction being demolished.

1. Strengthen or add new supports when required during progress of selective demolition.

C. Remove temporary barricades and protections where hazards no longer exist.

3.3 SELECTIVE DEMOLITION, GENERAL

A. General: Demolish and remove existing construction only to the extent required by new construction and as indicated. Use methods required to complete the Work within limitations of governing regulations and as follows:

1. Proceed with selective demolition systematically, from higher to lower level. Complete selective demolition operations above each floor or tier before disturbing supporting members on the next lower level.
2. Neatly cut openings and holes plumb, square, and true to dimensions required. Use cutting methods least likely to damage construction to remain or adjoining construction. Use hand tools or small power tools designed for sawing or grinding, not hammering and chopping. Temporarily cover openings to remain.
3. Cut or drill from the exposed or finished side into concealed surfaces to avoid marring existing finished surfaces.
4. Do not use cutting torches until work area is cleared of flammable materials. At concealed spaces, such as duct and pipe interiors, verify condition and contents of hidden space before starting flame-cutting operations. Maintain portable fire-suppression devices during flame-cutting operations.
5. Maintain fire watch during and for at least 1 hour after flame-cutting operations.
6. Maintain adequate ventilation when using cutting torches.
7. Remove decayed, vermin-infested, or otherwise dangerous or unsuitable materials found in area of work and promptly dispose of off-site.
8. Remove structural framing members and lower to ground by method suitable to avoid free fall and to prevent ground impact or dust generation.
9. Locate selective demolition equipment and remove debris and materials so as not to impose excessive loads on supporting walls, floors, or framing.
10. Dispose of demolished items and materials promptly. Comply with requirements in Section 017419 "Construction Waste Management and Disposal."

B. Site Access and Temporary Controls: Conduct selective demolition and debris-removal operations to ensure minimum interference with roads, streets, walks, walkways, and other adjacent occupied and used facilities.

C. Removed and Salvaged Items:

1. Remove surface debris from salvaged items.
2. Store items in a secure area until delivery to Owner.
3. Transport items to Owner's storage area on-site, designated by Owner .
4. Protect items from damage during transport and storage.

D. Removed and Reinstalled Items:

1. Clean and repair items to functional condition adequate for intended reuse.

2. Reinstall items in locations indicated. Comply with installation requirements for new materials and equipment. Provide connections, supports, and miscellaneous materials necessary to make item functional for use indicated.

- E. Existing Items to Remain: Protect construction indicated to remain against damage and soiling during selective demolition. When permitted by Architect, items may be removed to a suitable, protected storage location during selective demolition and cleaned and reinstalled in their original locations after selective demolition operations are complete.

3.4 SELECTIVE DEMOLITION PROCEDURES FOR SPECIFIC MATERIALS

- A. Masonry: Demolish in small sections. Cut masonry at junctures with construction to remain, using power-driven saw, and then remove masonry between saw cuts.
- B. Roofing: Remove no more existing roofing than what can be covered in one day by new roofing and so that building interior remains watertight and weathertight. See Section 073113 "Asphalt Shingles" for new roofing requirements.
 1. Remove existing roof membrane, flashings, copings, and roof accessories.
 2. Remove existing roofing system down to substrate.

3.5 DISPOSAL OF DEMOLISHED MATERIALS

- A. Remove demolition waste materials from Project site
 1. Do not allow demolished materials to accumulate on-site.
 2. Remove and transport debris in a manner that will prevent spillage on adjacent surfaces and areas.
 3. Remove debris from elevated portions of building by chute, hoist, or other device that will convey debris to grade level in a controlled descent.
 4. Comply with requirements specified in Section 017419 "Construction Waste Management and Disposal."
- B. Burning: Do not burn demolished materials.

3.6 CLEANING

- A. Clean adjacent structures and improvements of dust, dirt, and debris caused by selective demolition operations. Return adjacent areas to condition existing before selective demolition operations began.

END OF SECTION 024119

SECTION 040322 - HISTORIC BRICK UNIT MASONRY REPAIR

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes historic treatment work consisting of repairing historic clay brick masonry as follows:
 - 1. Repairing unit masonry.
 - 2. Removing abandoned anchors.
 - 3. Painting steel uncovered during the work.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 013591 "Historic Treatment Procedures" for general historic treatment requirements.
 - 2. Section 076200 "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim" for metal flashing installed in or on repaired masonry.

1.3 UNIT PRICES

- A. Work of this Section is affected by unit prices specified in Section 012200 "Unit Prices."
 - 1. Unit prices apply to authorized work covered by estimated quantities.
 - 2. Unit prices apply to additions to and deletions from Work as authorized by Change Orders.

1.4 DEFINITIONS

- A. Low-Pressure Spray:
 - 1. Pressure: 100 to 400 psi.
 - 2. Flow Rate: 4 to 6 gpm.
- B. Rebuilding (Setting) Mortar: Mortar used to set and anchor masonry in a structure, distinct from pointing mortar installed after masonry is set in place.
- C. Saturation Coefficient: Ratio of the weight of water absorbed during immersion in cold water to weight absorbed during immersion in boiling water; used as an indication of resistance of bricks to freezing and thawing.

1.5 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site .
 - 1. Review minutes of Preliminary Historic Treatment Conference that pertain to masonry historic treatment and repair.
 - 2. Review methods and procedures related to repairing historic brick masonry, including, but not limited to, the following:
 - a. Historic treatment specialist's personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
 - b. Materials, material application, sequencing, tolerances, and required clearances.
 - c. Quality-control program.
 - d. Fire-protection plan.
 - e. Unit masonry historic treatment program.

1.6 SEQUENCING AND SCHEDULING

- A. Order sand and gray portland cement for colored mortar immediately after approval of Samples . Take delivery of and store at Project site a sufficient quantity to complete Project.
- B. Work Sequence: Perform masonry historic treatment work in the following sequence, which includes work specified in this and other Sections:
 - 1. Remove plant growth.
 - 2. Rake out mortar from joints surrounding masonry to be replaced and from joints adjacent to masonry repairs along joints.
 - 3. Repair masonry, including replacing existing masonry with new masonry materials.
 - 4. Rake out mortar from joints to be repointed.
 - 5. Point mortar and sealant joints.
 - 6. After repairs and repointing have been completed and cured, perform a final cleaning to remove residues from this work.
- C. As scaffolding is removed, patch anchor holes used to attach scaffolding. Patch holes in bricks according to "Brick Masonry Patching" Article. Patch holes in mortar joints according to Section 040323 "Historic Brick Unit Masonry Repointing."

1.7 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
 - 2. Include recommendations for product application and use.
 - 3. Include test data substantiating that products comply with requirements.
- B. Shop Drawings:
 - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and locations of masonry repair work on the structure.
 - 2. Show full-size patterns with complete dimensions for new and their jointing, showing relationship of existing units to new units.
 - 3. Show provisions for expansion joints or other sealant joints.

4. Show provisions for flashing, lighting fixtures, conduits, and weep holes as required.
5. Show replacement and repair anchors. Include details of anchors within individual bricks, with locations of anchors and dimensions of holes and recesses in units required for anchors.
6. Show locations of scaffolding and points of scaffolding in contact with masonry. Include details of each point of contact or anchorage.

C. Samples for Initial Selection: For the following:

1. Colored Mortar: Submit sets of mortar that will be left exposed in the form of sample mortar strips, 6 inches long by 1/4 inch wide, set in aluminum or plastic channels.
 - a. Have each set contain a close color range of at least three Samples of different mixes of colored sands and cements that produce a mortar matching existing, cleaned mortar when cured and dry.
 - b. Submit with precise measurements on ingredients, proportions, gradations, and sources of colored sands from which each Sample was made.
2. Include similar Samples of accessories involving color selection.

D. Samples for Verification: For the following:

1. Each type of brick to be used for replacing existing units. Include sets of Samples to show the full range of shape, color, and texture to be expected.
 - a. For each brick type, provide straps or panels containing at least four bricks. Include multiple straps for brick with a wide range.

1.8 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For historic treatment specialist including field supervisors and workers .
- B. Quality-control program.
- C. Unit masonry historic treatment program.

1.9 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Historic Treatment Specialist Qualifications: A qualified historic brick masonry repair specialist. Experience installing standard unit masonry is insufficient experience for masonry historic treatment work.
- B. Quality-Control Program: Prepare a written quality-control program for this Project to systematically demonstrate the ability of personnel to properly follow methods and use materials and tools without damaging masonry. Include provisions for supervising worker performance and preventing damage.
- C. Unit Masonry Historic Treatment Program: Prepare a written, detailed description of materials, methods, equipment, and sequence of operations to be used for each phase of historic treatment work, including protection of surrounding materials and Project site.
 1. Include methods for keeping exposed mortar damp during curing period.
 2. If materials and methods other than those indicated are proposed for any phase of historic treatment work, add to the quality-control program a written description of such

materials and methods, including evidence of successful use on comparable projects, and demonstrations to show their effectiveness for this Project.

1.10 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver bricks to Project site strapped together in suitable packs or pallets or in heavy-duty cartons and protected against impact and chipping.
- B. Deliver packaged materials to Project site in manufacturer's original and unopened containers, labeled with manufacturer's name and type of products.
- C. Store cementitious materials on elevated platforms, under cover, and in a dry location. Do not use cementitious materials that have become damp.
- D. Store hydrated lime in manufacturer's original and unopened containers. Discard lime if containers have been damaged or have been opened for more than two days.
- E. Store sand where grading and other required characteristics can be maintained and contamination avoided.
- F. Handle bricks to prevent overstressing, chipping, defacement, and other damage.

1.11 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Weather Limitations: Proceed with installation only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit repair work to be performed according to product manufacturers' written instructions and specified requirements.
- B. Temperature Limits: Repair brick masonry only when air temperature is between 40 and 90 deg F and is predicted to remain so for at least seven days after completion of the Work unless otherwise indicated.
- C. For manufactured repair materials, perform work within the environmental limits set by each manufacturer.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of material for repairing historic masonry (face brick, cement, sand, etc.) from single source with resources to provide materials of consistent quality in appearance and physical properties.

2.2 MASONRY MATERIALS

- A. Face Brick: Units, including molded, ground, cut, or sawed shapes as required to complete masonry repair work.

1. Brick Matching Existing: Units with colors, color variation within units, surface texture, size, and shape that match existing brickwork.
 - a. For existing brickwork that exhibits a range of colors or color variation within units, provide brick that proportionally matches that range and variation rather than brick that matches an individual color within that range.
 2. Tolerances as Fabricated: According to tolerance requirements in ASTM C 216, Type FBS .
- B. Building Brick: ASTM C 62, of same vertical dimension as face brick, for masonry work concealed from view.
1. Grade SW or Grade MW for concealed backup.
- C. Salvaged Brick: Obtain salvaged brick from location indicated on Drawings. Clean off residual mortar.

2.3 MORTAR MATERIALS

- A. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150/C 150M, Type I or Type II; white or gray or both where required for color matching of mortar.
1. Provide cement containing not more than 0.60 percent total alkali when tested according to ASTM C 114.
- B. Hydrated Lime: ASTM C 207, Type S.
- C. Mortar Sand: ASTM C 144 unless otherwise indicated.
1. Match size, texture, and gradation of existing mortar sand as closely as possible. Blend several sands if necessary to achieve suitable match.
 2. Colored Mortar: Natural sand or ground marble, granite, or other sound stone of color necessary to produce required mortar color.
 3. For exposed mortar, provide sand with rounded edges.
- D. Water: ASTM C 270, potable.

2.4 ACCESSORY MATERIALS

- A. Setting Buttons and Shims: Resilient plastic, nonstaining to masonry, sized to suit joint thicknesses and bed depths of bricks, less the required depth of pointing materials unless removed before pointing.
- B. Masking Tape: Nonstaining, nonabsorbent material; compatible with mortar, joint primers, sealants, and surfaces adjacent to joints; and that easily comes off entirely, including adhesive.
- C. Antirust Coating: Fast-curing, lead- and chromate-free, self-curing, universal modified-alkyd primer according to MPI #23 (surface-tolerant, anti-corrosive metal primer) or SSPC-Paint 20 or SSPC-Paint 29 zinc-rich coating .

1. Surface Preparation: Use coating requiring no better than SSPC-SP 2, "Hand Tool Cleaning," or surface preparation according to manufacturer's literature or certified statement.
- D. Other Products: Select materials and methods of use based on the following, subject to approval of a mockup:
 1. Previous effectiveness in performing the work involved.
 2. Minimal possibility of damaging exposed surfaces.
 3. Consistency of each application.
 4. Uniformity of the resulting overall appearance.
 5. Do not use products or tools that could do the following:
 - a. Remove, alter, or harm the present condition or future preservation of existing surfaces, including surrounding surfaces not in Contract.
 - b. Leave residue on surfaces.

2.5 MORTAR MIXES

- A. Measurement and Mixing: Measure cementitious materials and sand in a dry condition by volume or equivalent weight. Do not measure by shovel; use known measure. Mix materials in a clean, mechanical batch mixer.
- B. Colored Mortar: Produce mortar of color required by using specified ingredients. Do not alter specified proportions without Architect's approval.
- C. Do not use admixtures in mortar unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Mixes: Mix mortar materials in the following proportions:
 1. Rebuilding (Setting) Mortar by Type: ASTM C 270, Proportion Specification, Type N unless otherwise indicated; with cementitious material limited to portland cement and lime.
 2. Rebuilding (Setting) Mortar by Property: ASTM C 270, Property Specification, Type N unless otherwise indicated; with cementitious material limited to portland cement and lime.
 3. Rebuilding (Setting) Mortar by ASTM C 1713 Composition: ASTM C 1713, with binder material limited to portland cement and lime, and with a volume ratio of 1 part portland cement, 1 part lime, and 6 parts sand.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PROTECTION

- A. Prevent mortar from staining face of surrounding masonry and other surfaces.
 1. Cover sills, ledges, and other projecting items to protect them from mortar droppings.
 2. Keep wall area wet below rebuilding and repair work to discourage mortar from adhering.
 3. Immediately remove mortar splatters in contact with exposed masonry and other surfaces.

- B. Remove gutters and downspouts and associated hardware adjacent to immediate work area, and store during masonry repair work.

3.2 MASONRY REPAIR, GENERAL

- A. Have repair work performed only by qualified historic treatment specialist.
- B. Repair Appearance Standard: Repaired surfaces are to have a uniform appearance as viewed from feet away by Architect.

3.3 ABANDONED ANCHOR REMOVAL

- A. Remove abandoned anchors, brackets, wood nailers, and other extraneous items no longer in use unless indicated to remain .
 - 1. Remove items carefully to avoid spalling or cracking masonry.
 - 2. Notify Architect before proceeding if an item cannot be removed without damaging surrounding masonry. Do the following where directed:
 - a. Cut or grind off item approximately 3/4 inch(es) beneath surface, and core drill a recess of same depth in surrounding masonry as close around item as practicable.
 - b. Immediately paint exposed end of item with two coats of antirust coating, following coating manufacturer's written instructions and without exceeding manufacturer's recommended dry film thickness per coat. Keep paint off sides of recess.
 - 3. Patch the hole where each item was removed unless directed to remove and replace brick.

3.4 BRICK REMOVAL AND REPLACEMENT: BR-1 and BR-3

- A. At locations indicated, remove bricks that are damaged, spalled, or deteriorated or are to be reused. Carefully remove entire units from joint to joint, without damaging surrounding masonry, in a manner that permits replacement with full-size units.
 - 1. When removing single bricks, remove material from center of brick and work toward outside edges.
- B. Support and protect remaining masonry that surrounds removal area.
- C. Maintain flashing, reinforcement, lintels, and adjoining construction in an undamaged condition. Coordinate with new flashing, reinforcement, and lintels, which are specified in other Sections.
- D. Notify Architect of unforeseen detrimental conditions, including voids, cracks, bulges, loose masonry units in existing backup, rotted wood, rusted metal, and other deteriorated items.
- E. Remove in an undamaged condition as many whole bricks as possible.
 - 1. Remove mortar, loose particles, and soil from brick by cleaning with hand chisels, brushes, and water.
 - 2. Remove sealants by cutting close to brick with utility knife and cleaning with solvents.
 - 3. Store brick for reuse. Store off ground, on skids, and protected from weather.
 - 4. Deliver cleaned brick not required for reuse to Owner unless otherwise indicated.

- F. Clean masonry surrounding removal areas by removing mortar, dust, and loose particles in preparation for brick replacement.
- G. Replace removed damaged brick with other removed brick and salvaged brick in good condition, where possible, or with new brick matching existing brick. Do not use broken units unless they can be cut to usable size.
- H. Install replacement brick into bonding and coursing pattern of existing brick. If cutting is required, use a motor-driven saw designed to cut masonry with clean, sharp, unchipped edges.
 - 1. Maintain joint width for replacement units to match existing joints.
 - 2. Use setting buttons or shims to set units accurately spaced with uniform joints.
- I. Lay replacement brick with rebuilding (setting) mortar and with completely filled bed, head, and collar joints. Butter ends with sufficient mortar to fill head joints and shove into place. Wet both replacement and surrounding bricks that have ASTM C 67 initial rates of absorption (suction) of more than 30 g/30 sq. in. per min.. Use wetting methods that ensure that units are nearly saturated but surface is dry when laid.
 - 1. Tool exposed mortar joints in repaired areas to match joints of surrounding existing brickwork.
 - 2. Rake out mortar used for laying brick before mortar sets according to Section 040323 "Historic Brick Unit Masonry Repointing." Point at same time as repointing of surrounding area.
 - 3. When mortar is hard enough to support units, remove shims and other devices interfering with pointing of joints.
- J. Curing: Cure mortar by maintaining in thoroughly damp condition for at least 72 consecutive hours, including weekends and holidays.
 - 1. Hairline cracking within the mortar or mortar separation at edge of a joint is unacceptable. Completely remove such mortar and repoint.

3.5 BACKUP MASONRY REMOVAL AND REPLACEMENT

- A. Where backup masonry is fractured or unstable and at locations indicated, remove mortar and masonry units that are broken or deteriorated and rebuild with whole, new brick or whole salvaged backup masonry units. Carefully remove entire units from joint to joint, without damaging surrounding masonry, in a manner that permits replacement with full-size units.
- B. Support and protect remaining masonry that surrounds removal area.
- C. Maintain flashing, reinforcement, anchors, lintels, and adjoining construction in an undamaged condition. Coordinate with new flashing, reinforcement, and lintels, which are specified in other Sections.
- D. Notify Architect of unforeseen detrimental conditions, including voids, cracks, bulges, loose masonry units beyond the removal area, rotted wood, rusted metal, and other deteriorated items.
- E. Remove in an undamaged condition as many whole bricks as possible.

1. Remove mortar, loose particles, and soil from brick by cleaning with hand chisels, brushes, and water.
 2. Remove sealants by cutting close to brick with utility knife and cleaning with solvents.
 3. Store brick for reuse. Store off ground, on skids, and protected from weather.
 4. Deliver cleaned brick not required for reuse to Owner unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Clean masonry surrounding removal areas by removing mortar, dust, and loose particles in preparation for brick replacement.
- G. Replace removed damaged brick with salvaged backup brick in good condition, where possible, or with new building brick matching existing backup brick. Do not use broken units unless they can be cut to usable size.
- H. Install replacement brick into bonding and coursing pattern of existing brick. If cutting is required, use a motor-driven saw designed to cut masonry with clean, sharp, unchipped edges.
- I. Lay replacement brick with rebuilding (setting) mortar and with completely filled bed, head, and collar joints. Butter ends with sufficient mortar to fill head joints and shove into place. Wet both replacement and surrounding bricks that have ASTM C 67 initial rates of absorption (suction) of more than 30 g/30 sq. in. per min.. Use wetting methods that ensure that units are nearly saturated but surface is dry when laid.
- J. Curing: Cure mortar by maintaining in thoroughly damp condition for at least 72 consecutive hours, including weekends and holidays.
1. Hairline cracking within the mortar or mortar separation at edge of a joint is unacceptable. Completely remove such mortar and repoint.

3.6 PAINTING STEEL UNCOVERED DURING THE WORK

- A. Notify Architect if steel is exposed during masonry removal. Where Architect determines that steel is structural, or for other reasons cannot be totally removed, prepare and paint it as follows:
1. Surface Preparation: Remove paint, rust, and other contaminants according to SSPC-SP 2, "Hand Tool Cleaning," or SSPC-SP 3, "Power Tool Cleaning," as applicable to comply with paint manufacturer's recommended preparation.
 2. Antirust Coating: Immediately paint exposed steel with two coats of antirust coating, following coating manufacturer's written instructions and without exceeding manufacturer's recommended rate of application (dry film thickness per coat).
- B. If on inspection and rust removal, the thickness of a steel member is found to be reduced from rust by more than 1/16 inch(es), notify Architect before proceeding.

3.7 FINAL CLEANING

- A. Clean adjacent nonmasonry surfaces. Use detergent and soft brushes or cloths.
- B. Clean mortar and debris from roof; remove debris from gutters and downspouts. Rinse off roof and flush gutters and downspouts.

- C. Remove masking materials, leaving no residues that could trap dirt.

3.8 MASONRY-WASTE DISPOSAL

- A. Salvageable Materials: Unless otherwise indicated, excess masonry materials are Contractor's property.
- B. Masonry Waste: Remove masonry waste and legally dispose of off Owner's property.

END OF SECTION 040322

SECTION 040323 - HISTORIC BRICK UNIT MASONRY REPOINTING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes historic treatment work consisting of repointing brick masonry as follows:
 - 1. Repointing joints with mortar .
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 013591 "Historic Treatment Procedures" for general historic treatment requirements.

1.3 UNIT PRICES

- A. Work of this Section is affected by unit prices specified in Section 012200 "Unit Prices."
 - 1. Unit prices apply to authorized work covered by estimated quantities.
 - 2. Unit prices apply to additions to and deletions from Work as authorized by Change Orders.

1.4 DEFINITIONS

- A. Low-Pressure Spray:
 - 1. Pressure: 100 to 400 psi.
 - 2. Flow Rate: 4 to 6 gpm.

1.5 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site .
 - 1. Review minutes of Preliminary Historic Treatment Conference that pertain to masonry historic treatment and repointing.
 - 2. Review methods and procedures related to repointing historic brick masonry, including, but not limited to, the following:
 - a. Historic treatment specialist's personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
 - b. Materials, material application, sequencing, tolerances, and required clearances.

- c. Quality-control program.
- d. Fire-protection plan.
- e. Unit masonry historic treatment program.

1.6 SEQUENCING AND SCHEDULING

- A. Order sand and gray portland cement for pointing mortar immediately after approval of Samples . Take delivery of and store at Project site a sufficient quantity to complete Project.
- B. Work Sequence: Perform masonry historic treatment work in the following sequence, which includes work specified in this and other Sections:
 - 1. Remove plant growth.
 - 2. Inspect masonry for open mortar joints and permanently or temporarily point them before cleaning to prevent intrusion of water and other cleaning materials into the wall.
 - 3. Rake out mortar from joints surrounding masonry to be replaced and from joints adjacent to masonry repairs along joints.
 - 4. Repair masonry, including replacing existing masonry with new masonry materials.
 - 5. Rake out mortar from joints to be repointed.
 - 6. Point mortar joints.
 - 7. After repairs and repointing have been completed and cured, perform a final cleaning to remove residues from this work.
- C. As scaffolding is removed, patch anchor holes used to attach scaffolding. Patch holes in bricks according to Section 040322 "Historic Brick Unit Masonry Repair." Patch holes in mortar joints according to "Repointing" Article.

1.7 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
 - 2. Include recommendations for product application and use.
 - 3. Include test data substantiating that products comply with requirements.
- B. Samples for Initial Selection: For the following:
 - 1. Pointing Mortar: Submit sets of mortar for pointing in the form of sample mortar strips, 6 inches long by 1/4 inch wide, set in aluminum or plastic channels.
 - a. Have each set contain a close color range of at least three Samples of different mixes of colored sands and cements that produce a mortar matching existing, cleaned mortar when cured and dry.
 - b. Submit with precise measurements on ingredients, proportions, gradations, and sources of colored sands from which each Sample was made.
 - 2. Include similar Samples of accessories involving color selection.

1.8 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For historic treatment specialist including field supervisors and workers .

- B. Quality-control program.
- C. Unit masonry historic treatment program.

1.9 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Historic Treatment Specialist Qualifications: A qualified historic masonry repointing specialist. Experience in pointing or repointing only new or nonhistoric masonry is insufficient experience for masonry historic treatment work.
- B. Quality-Control Program: Prepare a written quality-control program for this Project to systematically demonstrate the ability of personnel to properly follow methods and use materials and tools without damaging masonry. Include provisions for supervising worker performance and preventing damage.
- C. Unit Masonry Historic Treatment Program: Prepare a written, detailed description of materials, methods, equipment, and sequence of operations to be used for each phase of historic treatment work, including protection of surrounding materials and Project site.
 - 1. Include methods for keeping pointing mortar damp during curing period.
 - 2. If materials and methods other than those indicated are proposed for any phase of historic treatment work, add to the quality-control program a written description of such materials and methods, including evidence of successful use on comparable projects, and demonstrations to show their effectiveness for this Project.

1.10 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver packaged materials to Project site in manufacturer's original and unopened containers, labeled with manufacturer's name and type of products.
- B. Store cementitious materials on elevated platforms, under cover, and in a dry location. Do not use cementitious materials that have become damp.
- C. Store hydrated lime in manufacturer's original and unopened containers. Discard lime if containers have been damaged or have been opened for more than two days.
- D. Store sand where grading and other required characteristics can be maintained and contamination avoided.

1.11 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Weather Limitations: Proceed with installation only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit repointing work to be performed according to product manufacturers' written instructions and specified requirements.
- B. Temperature Limits: Repoint mortar joints only when air temperature is between 40 and 90 deg F and is predicted to remain so for at least seven days after completion of the Work unless otherwise indicated.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of material for repointing historic masonry (cement, sand, etc.) from single source with resources to provide materials of consistent quality in appearance and physical properties.

2.2 MORTAR MATERIALS

- A. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150/C 150M, Type I or Type II; white or gray or both where required for color matching of mortar.
 - 1. Provide cement containing not more than 0.60 percent total alkali when tested according to ASTM C 114.
- B. Hydrated Lime: ASTM C 207, Type S.
- C. Mortar Sand: ASTM C 144 unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Match size, texture, and gradation of existing mortar sand as closely as possible. Blend several sands if necessary to achieve suitable match.
 - 2. Color: Natural sand or ground marble, granite, or other sound stone of color necessary to produce required mortar color.
 - 3. Provide sand with rounded edges.
- D. Water: ASTM C 270, potable.

2.3 ACCESSORY MATERIALS

- A. Masking Tape: Nonstaining, nonabsorbent material; compatible with mortar, joint primers, sealants, and surfaces adjacent to joints; and that easily comes off entirely, including adhesive.

2.4 MORTAR MIXES

- A. Measurement and Mixing: Measure cementitious materials and sand in a dry condition by volume or equivalent weight. Do not measure by shovel; use known measure. Mix materials in a clean, mechanical batch mixer.
- B. Do not use admixtures in mortar unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Mixes: Mix mortar materials in the following proportions:
 - 1. Pointing Mortar by Type: ASTM C 270, Proportion Specification, Type N unless otherwise indicated; with cementitious material limited to portland cement and lime.
 - 2. Pointing Mortar by Property: ASTM C 270, Property Specification, Type N unless otherwise indicated; with cementitious material limited to portland cement and lime.

3. Pointing Mortar by ASTM C 1713 Composition: ASTM C 1713, with binder material limited to portland cement and lime , and with a volume ratio of 1 part portland cement, 1 part lime, and 6 parts sand .

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PROTECTION

- A. Prevent mortar from staining face of surrounding masonry and other surfaces.
 1. Cover sills, ledges, and other projecting items to protect them from mortar droppings.
 2. Keep wall area wet below rebuilding and pointing work to discourage mortar from adhering.
 3. Immediately remove mortar splatters in contact with exposed masonry and other surfaces.
- B. Remove gutters and downspouts and associated hardware adjacent to immediate work area and store during masonry repointing work.

3.2 MASONRY REPOINTING, GENERAL

- A. Have repointing work performed only by qualified historic treatment specialist.
- B. Appearance Standard: Repointed surfaces are to have a uniform appearance as viewed from 50 feet away by Architect.

3.3 REPOINTING : BR-2

- A. Rake out and repoint joints to the following extent:
 1. All joints in areas indicated.
 2. Joints at locations of the following defects:
 - a. Holes and missing mortar.
 - b. Cracks that can be penetrated 1/4 inch or more by a knife blade 0.027 inch thick.
 - c. Cracks 1/8 inch(es) or more in width and of any depth.
 - d. Hollow-sounding joints when tapped by metal object.
 - e. Deterioration to point that mortar can be easily removed by hand, without tools.
 - f. Joints filled with substances other than mortar.
- B. Do not rake out and repoint joints where not required.
- C. Rake out joints as follows, according to procedures demonstrated in approved mockup:
 1. Remove mortar from joints to depth of not less than 3/4 inch and not less than that required to expose sound, unweathered mortar . Do not remove unsound mortar more than 2 inches deep; consult Architect for direction.
 2. Remove mortar from masonry surfaces within raked-out joints to provide reveals with square backs and to expose masonry for contact with pointing mortar. Brush, vacuum, or flush joints to remove dirt and loose debris.

3. Do not spall edges of bricks or widen joints. Replace or patch damaged bricks as directed by Architect.
 - a. Cut out center of mortar bed joints using angle grinders with diamond-impregnated metal blades. Remove remaining mortar in bed joints and mortar in head joints by hand with chisel and resilient mallet. Strictly adhere to approved quality-control program.
- D. Notify Architect of unforeseen detrimental conditions, including voids in mortar joints, cracks, loose masonry units, rotted wood, rusted metal, and other deteriorated items.
- E. Pointing with Mortar:
 1. Rinse joint surfaces with water to remove dust and mortar particles. Time rinsing application so, at time of pointing, joint surfaces are damp but free of standing water. If rinse water dries, dampen joint surfaces before pointing.
 2. Apply pointing mortar first to areas where existing mortar was removed to depths greater than surrounding areas. Apply in layers not greater than 3/8 inch(es) until a uniform depth is formed. Fully compact each layer thoroughly and allow it to become thumbprint hard before applying next layer.
 3. After deep areas have been filled to same depth as remaining joints, point joints by placing mortar in layers not greater than 3/8 inch(es). Fully compact each layer and allow it to become thumbprint hard before applying next layer. Where existing brick have worn or rounded edges, slightly recess finished mortar surface below face of masonry to avoid widened joint faces. Take care not to spread mortar beyond joint edges onto exposed masonry surfaces or to featheredge the mortar.
 4. When mortar is thumbprint hard, tool joints to match original appearance of joints as demonstrated in approved mockup. Remove excess mortar from edge of joint by brushing.
 5. Cure mortar by maintaining in thoroughly damp condition for at least 72 consecutive hours, including weekends and holidays.
 - a. Acceptable curing methods include covering with wet burlap and plastic sheeting, periodic hand misting, and periodic mist spraying using system of pipes, mist heads, and timers.
 - b. Adjust curing methods to ensure that pointing mortar is damp throughout its depth without eroding surface mortar.
 6. Hairline cracking within the mortar or mortar separation at edge of a joint is unacceptable. Remove mortar and repoint.
- F. Where repointing work precedes cleaning of existing masonry, allow mortar to harden at least 30 days before beginning cleaning work.

3.4 FINAL CLEANING

- A. After mortar has fully hardened, thoroughly clean exposed masonry surfaces of excess mortar and foreign matter; use wood scrapers, stiff-nylon or -fiber brushes, and clean water, applied by low-pressure spray.
 1. Do not use metal scrapers or brushes.
 2. Do not use acidic or alkaline cleaners.
- B. Clean adjacent nonmasonry surfaces. Use detergent and soft brushes or cloths.

- C. Clean mortar and debris from roof; remove debris from gutters and downspouts. Rinse off roof and flush gutters and downspouts.
- D. Remove masking materials, leaving no residues that could trap dirt.

END OF SECTION 040323

SECTION 040342 - HISTORIC STONE MASONRY REPAIR

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes historic treatment work consisting of repairing historic stone assemblies as follows:
 - 1. Repairing stone masonry.
 - 2. Removing abandoned anchors.
 - 3. Painting steel uncovered during the Work.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 013591 "Historic Treatment Procedures" for general historic treatment requirements.
 - 2. Section 076200 "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim" for metal flashing installed in or on repaired stonework.

1.3 UNIT PRICES

- A. Work of this Section is affected by unit prices specified in Section 012200 "Unit Prices."
 - 1. Unit prices apply to authorized work covered by estimated quantities.
 - 2. Unit prices apply to additions to and deletions from Work as authorized by Change Orders.

1.4 DEFINITIONS

- A. Low-Pressure Spray:
 - 1. Pressure: 100 to 400 psi.
 - 2. Flow Rate: 4 to 6 gpm.
- B. Face Bedding: Setting of stone with the rift or natural bedding planes (strata) vertical and parallel to the wall plane rather than horizontal or "naturally bedded," which holds bedding planes together by gravity.
- C. Rebuilding (Setting) Mortar: Mortar used to set and anchor masonry in a structure, distinct from pointing mortar installed after masonry is set in place.

- D. Rift: The most pronounced direction of splitting or cleavage of a stone.
- E. Stone Terminology: ASTM C 119.

1.5 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference on historic masonry repair and repointing at Project site .
 - 1. Review minutes of Preliminary Historic Treatment Conference that pertain to stone historic treatment and repair.
 - 2. Review methods and procedures related to repairing historic stone masonry, including, but not limited to, the following:
 - a. Verify historic treatment specialist's personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
 - b. Materials, material application, sequencing, tolerances, and required clearances.
 - c. Quality-control program.
 - d. Fire-protection plan.
 - e. Stone historic treatment program.

1.6 SEQUENCING AND SCHEDULING

- A. Order sand and gray portland cement for colored mortar immediately after approval of Samples . Take delivery of and store at Project site a sufficient quantity to complete Project.
- B. Work Sequence: Perform stone historic treatment work in the following sequence, which includes work specified in this and other Sections:
 - 1. Remove plant growth.
 - 2. Inspect stonework for open mortar joints and permanently or temporarily point them before cleaning to prevent the intrusion of water and other cleaning materials into the wall.
 - 3. Rake out mortar from joints surrounding stone to be replaced and from joints adjacent to stone repairs along joints.
 - 4. Repair stonework, including replacing existing stone with new cast stone. If required, repair backup masonry.
 - 5. Rake out mortar from joints to be repointed.
 - 6. Point mortar and sealant joints.
 - 7. After repairs and repointing have been completed and cured, perform a final cleaning to remove residues from this work.
- C. As scaffolding is removed, patch anchor holes used to attach scaffolding. Patch holes in stone according to Part 3 "Stone Patching" Article. Patch holes in mortar joints according to Section 040343 "Historic Stone Masonry Repointing."

1.7 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
2. Include recommendations for product application and use.
3. Include test data substantiating that products comply with requirements.

B. Shop Drawings:

1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and locations of stone repair work on the structure.
2. Show provisions for flashing, lighting fixtures, conduits, and weep holes as required.
3. Show locations of scaffolding and points of scaffolding in contact with masonry. Include details of each point of contact or anchorage.

C. Samples for Initial Selection: For the following:

1. Patching Compound: Submit sets of patching compound Samples in the form of plugs (patches in drilled holes) in sample units of stone representative of the range of stone colors on the building.
 - a. Have each set contain a close color range of at least three Samples of different mixes of patching compound that matches the variations in existing stone when cured and dry.
2. Include similar Samples of accessories involving color selection.

1.8 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For historic treatment specialist including field supervisors and workers .
- B. Quality-control program.
- C. Stone historic treatment program.

1.9 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Historic Treatment Specialist Qualifications: A qualified historic stone repair specialist. Experience installing standard unit masonry or new stone masonry is insufficient experience for stone historic treatment work.
 1. Historic Treatment Worker Qualifications: When stone units are being patched, assign at least one worker per crew who is trained and certified by manufacturer of patching compound to apply its products .
- B. Quality-Control Program: Prepare a written quality-control program for this Project to systematically demonstrate the ability of personnel to properly follow methods and use materials and tools without damaging masonry. Include provisions for supervising worker performance and preventing damage.
- C. Stone Historic Treatment Program: Prepare a written, detailed description of materials, methods, equipment, and sequence of operations to be used for each phase of the historic treatment work, including protection of surrounding materials and Project site.
 1. Include methods for keeping exposed mortar damp during curing period.

2. If materials and methods other than those indicated are proposed for any phase of historic treatment work, add to the quality-control program a written description of such materials and methods, including evidence of successful use on comparable projects, and demonstrations to show their effectiveness for this Project.

1.10 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver packaged materials to Project site in manufacturer's original and unopened containers, labeled with manufacturer's name and type of products.
- B. Store cementitious materials on elevated platforms, under cover, and in a dry location. Do not use cementitious materials that have become damp.
- C. Store hydrated lime in manufacturer's original and unopened containers. Discard lime if containers have been damaged or have been opened for more than two days.
- D. Store sand where grading and other required characteristics can be maintained and contamination avoided.
- E. Handle stone to prevent overstressing, chipping, defacement, and other damage.

1.11 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Weather Limitations: Proceed with installation only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit repair work to be performed according to product manufacturers' written instructions and specified requirements.
- B. Temperature Limits: Repair stonework only when air temperature is between 40 and 90 deg F and is predicted to remain so for at least seven days after completion of the Work unless otherwise indicated.
- C. For manufactured repair materials, perform work within the environmental limits set by each manufacturer.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of material for repairing historic masonry (stone, cement, sand, etc.) from single source with resources to provide materials of consistent quality in appearance and physical properties.

2.2 MASONRY MATERIALS

- A. Salvaged Stone: Obtain from location indicated on Drawings. Clean off residual mortar.
- B. Building Brick: Brick having same vertical dimension as existing backup brick, according to ASTM C 62 , Grade SW, MW, or NW. and Section 040322 "Historic Brick Unit Masonry Repair."

SECTION 040342 - HISTORIC STONE MASONRY REPAIR

040342 - 4

2.3 MORTAR MATERIALS

- A. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150/C 150M, Type I or Type II; white or gray, or both, where required for color matching of mortar.
 - 1. Provide cement containing not more than 0.60 percent total alkali when tested according to ASTM C 114.
- B. Hydrated Lime: ASTM C 207, Type S.
- C. Mortar Sand: ASTM C 144 unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Match size, texture, and gradation of existing mortar sand as closely as possible. Blend several sands if necessary to achieve suitable match.
 - 2. For exposed mortar, provide sand with rounded edges.
- D. Water: ASTM C 270, potable.

2.4 MANUFACTURED REPAIR MATERIALS

- A. Stone-Patching Compound: Factory-mixed cementitious product that is custom manufactured for patching stone.
 - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Cathedral Stone Products, Inc.; Jahn M90 - Concrete, or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Edison Coatings, Inc.
 - 2. Use formulation that is vapor and water permeable (equal to or more than the stone), exhibits low shrinkage, has lower modulus of elasticity than the stone units being repaired, and develops high bond strength to all stone types.
 - 3. Use formulation having working qualities and retardation control to permit forming and sculpturing where necessary.
 - 4. Formulate patching compound in colors, textures, and grain to match stone being patched. Provide no fewer than three colors to enable matching each piece of stone.
- B. Cementitious Crack Filler: Ultrafine superplasticized grout that can be injected into cracks, is suitable for application to wet or dry cracks, exhibits low shrinkage, and develops high bond strength to all stone types.
 - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Cathedral Stone Products, Inc.; Jahn M30 #32 Micro Injection Grout, or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Edison Coatings, Inc.

2.5 ACCESSORY MATERIALS

- A. Masking Tape: Nonstaining, nonabsorbent material; compatible with mortar, joint primers, sealants, and surfaces adjacent to joints; and that easily comes off entirely, including adhesive.

- B. Antirust Coating: Fast-curing, lead- and chromate-free, self-curing, universal modified-alkyd primer according to MPI #23 (surface-tolerant, anticorrosive metal primer or SSPC-Paint 20 or SSPC-Paint 29 zinc-rich coating .
 - 1. Surface Preparation: Use coating requiring no better than SSPC-SP 2, "Hand Tool Cleaning," or surface preparation according to manufacturer's literature or certified statement.
- C. Other Products: Select materials and methods of use based on the following, subject to approval of a mockup:
 - 1. Previous effectiveness in performing work involved.
 - 2. Minimal possibility of damaging exposed surfaces.
 - 3. Consistency of each application.
 - 4. Uniformity of the resulting overall appearance.
 - 5. Do not use products or tools that could do the following:
 - a. Remove, alter, or harm the present condition or future preservation of existing surfaces, including surrounding surfaces not in contract.
 - b. Leave residue on surfaces.

2.6 MORTAR MIXES

- A. Measurement and Mixing: Measure cementitious materials and sand in a dry condition by volume or equivalent weight. Do not measure by shovel; use known measure. Mix materials in a clean, mechanical batch mixer.
- B. Do not use admixtures in mortar unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Mixes: Mix mortar materials in the following proportions:
 - 1. Rebuilding (Setting) Mortar by Type: ASTM C 270, Proportion Specification, Type N unless otherwise indicated; with cementitious material limited to portland cement and lime.
 - 2. Rebuilding (Setting) Mortar by Property: ASTM C 270, Property Specification, Type N unless otherwise indicated; with cementitious material limited to portland cement and lime.
 - 3. Rebuilding (Setting) Mortar by ASTM C 1713 Composition: ASTM C 1713, with binder material limited to portland cement and lime , and with a volume ratio of 1 part portland cement, 1 part lime, and 6 parts sand .

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PROTECTION

- A. Prevent mortar from staining face of surrounding stone and other surfaces.
 - 1. Cover sills, ledges, and other projecting items to protect them from mortar droppings.
 - 2. Keep wall area wet below rebuilding and repair work to discourage mortar from adhering.
 - 3. Immediately remove mortar splatters in contact with exposed masonry and other surfaces.

- B. Remove gutters and downspouts and associated hardware adjacent to immediate work area and store during stone repair work.
 - 1. Provide temporary rain drainage during work to direct water away from building.

3.2 STONE REPAIR, GENERAL

- A. Have repair work performed only by qualified historic treatment specialist.
- B. Repair Appearance Standard: Repaired surfaces are to have a uniform appearance as viewed from 50 feet away by Architect.

3.3 ABANDONED ANCHOR REMOVAL

- A. Remove abandoned anchors, brackets, wood nailers, and other extraneous items no longer in use unless indicated to remain .
 - 1. Remove items carefully to avoid spalling or cracking stone.
 - 2. Notify Architect before proceeding if an item cannot be removed without damaging surrounding stone; do the following where directed:
 - a. Cut or grind off item approximately 3/4 inch beneath surface, and core drill a recess of same depth in surrounding stone as close around item as practical.
 - b. Immediately paint exposed end of item with two coats of antirust coating, following coating manufacturer's written instructions and without exceeding manufacturer's recommended dry film thickness per coat. Keep paint off sides of recess.
 - 3. Patch the hole where each item was removed unless directed to remove and replace the stone unit.

3.4 STONE REMOVAL AND REPLACEMENT : ST-1 or ST-3

- A. At locations indicated, remove stone that has deteriorated or is damaged beyond repair. Carefully remove entire units from joint to joint, without damaging surrounding masonry, in a manner that permits replacement with full-size units.
- B. Support and protect remaining masonry that was supported by removed stone.
- C. Maintain flashing, reinforcement, lintels, and adjoining construction in an undamaged condition. Coordinate with new flashing, reinforcement, and lintels, which are specified in other Sections.
- D. Notify Architect of unforeseen detrimental conditions, including voids, cracks, bulges, loose masonry units in existing stone or unit masonry backup, rotted wood, rusted metal, and other deteriorated items.
- E. Clean masonry surrounding removal areas by removing mortar, dust, and loose particles in preparation for stone replacement.
- F. Replace removed damaged stone with cast stone according to requirements in Section 047200 "Cast Stone Masonry."

- G. Curing: Cure mortar by maintaining in thoroughly damp condition for at least 72 consecutive hours, including weekends and holidays.
 - 1. Hairline cracking within the mortar or mortar separation at edge of a joint is unacceptable. Completely remove such mortar and repoint.

3.5 BACKUP MASONRY REMOVAL AND REPLACEMENT

- A. Where backup masonry is fractured or unstable and at locations indicated, remove mortar and masonry units that are broken or deteriorated, and rebuild with whole, new brick or whole, salvaged backup masonry units. Carefully remove entire units from joint to joint, without damaging surrounding masonry, in a manner that permits replacement with full-size units.
- B. Perform backup masonry removal and replacement according to requirements in Section 040322 "Historic Brick Unit Masonry Repair."
- C. Support and protect remaining masonry that surrounds removal area.
- D. Maintain flashing, reinforcement, anchors, lintels, and adjoining construction in an undamaged condition. Coordinate with new flashing, reinforcement, and lintels, which are specified in other Sections.
- E. Notify Architect of unforeseen detrimental conditions, including voids, cracks, bulges, loose masonry units beyond the removal area, rotted wood, rusted metal, and other deteriorated items.
- F. Remove in an undamaged condition as many whole bricks as possible.
 - 1. Remove mortar, loose particles, and soil from brick by cleaning with hand chisels, brushes, and water.
 - 2. Remove sealants by cutting close to brick with utility knife and cleaning with solvents.
 - 3. Store brick for reuse. Store off ground, on skids, and protected from weather.
 - 4. Deliver cleaned brick not required for reuse to Owner unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Clean masonry surrounding removal areas by removing mortar, dust, and loose particles in preparation for brick replacement.
- H. Replace removed damaged brick with salvaged backup brick in good condition, where possible, or with new building brick matching existing backup brick. Do not use broken units unless they can be cut to usable size.
- I. Install replacement brick into bonding and coursing pattern of existing brick. If cutting is required, use a motor-driven saw designed to cut masonry with clean, sharp, unchipped edges.
- J. Lay replacement brick with rebuilding (setting) mortar and with completely filled bed, head, and collar joints. Butter ends with sufficient mortar to fill head joints and shove into place. Wet both replacement and surrounding bricks that have ASTM C 67 initial rates of absorption (suction) of more than 30 g/30 sq. in. per min.. Use wetting methods that ensure that units are nearly saturated but surface is dry when laid.
- K. Curing: Cure mortar by maintaining in thoroughly damp condition for at least 72 consecutive hours, including weekends and holidays.

1. Hairline cracking within the mortar or mortar separation at edge of a joint is unacceptable. Completely remove such mortar and repoint.

3.6 PAINTING STEEL UNCOVERED DURING THE WORK

- A. Notify Architect if steel is exposed during stone removal. Where Architect determines that it is structural, or for other reasons cannot be totally removed, prepare and paint steel as follows:
 1. Surface Preparation: Remove paint, rust, and other contaminants according to SSPC-SP 2, "Hand Tool Cleaning," or SSPC-SP 3, "Power Tool Cleaning," as applicable to comply with paint manufacturer's recommended preparation.
 2. Antirust Coating: Immediately paint exposed steel with two coats of antirust coating, following coating manufacturer's written instructions and without exceeding manufacturer's recommended rate of application (dry film thickness per coat).
- B. If on inspection and rust removal, the thickness of a steel member is found to be reduced from rust by more than 1/16 inch, notify Architect before proceeding.

3.7 CRACK INJECTION : ST-4

- A. General: Comply with cementitious crack-filler manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Drill 1/4-inch- diameter injection holes as follows:
 1. Transverse Cracks Less Than 3/8 inch Wide: Drill holes through center of crack at 12 to 18 inches o.c.
 2. Transverse Cracks More Than 3/8 inch Wide: Drill holes through center of crack at 18 to 36 inches o.c.
 3. Delaminations: Drill holes at approximately 18 inches o.c., both vertically and horizontally.
 4. Drill holes 2 inches deep.
- C. Clean out drill holes and cracks with compressed air and water. Remove dirt and organic matter, loose material, sealants, and failed crack repair materials.
- D. Place plastic injection ports in drilled holes, and seal face of cracks between injection ports with clay or other nonstaining, removable plugging material. Leave openings at upper ends of cracks for air release.
- E. Inject cementitious crack filler through ports sequentially, beginning at one end of area and working to opposite end; where possible, begin at lower end of injection area and work upward. Inject filler until it extrudes from adjacent ports. After port has been injected, plug with clay or other suitable material, and begin injecting filler at adjacent port, repeating process until all ports have been injected.
- F. Clean cementitious crack filler from face of stone before it sets, by scrubbing with water.
- G. After cementitious crack filler has set, remove injection ports, plugging material, and excess filler. Patch injection holes and surface of cracks as specified in "Stone Patching" Article.

3.8 STONE PATCHING : ST-5

- A. Patch the following stone units unless another type of repair or replacement is indicated:
 - 1. Units indicated to be patched.
 - 2. Units with chipped edges or corners that are exposing depth of mortar joints to the elements, typically breaks 3/4 inch in dimension or greater.
- B. Remove deteriorated material, and remove adjacent material that has begun to deteriorate. Carefully remove additional material so patch does not have feathered edges but has square or slightly undercut edges on area to be patched and is at least 1/4 inch thick, but not less than as recommended in writing by patching compound manufacturer.
- C. Mask adjacent mortar joint or rake out for repointing if patch extends to edge of stone unit.
- D. Mix patching compound in individual batches to match each stone unit being patched. Combine one or more colors of patching compound, as needed, to produce exact match.
- E. Brush-coat stone surfaces with slurry coat of patching compound according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- F. Place patching compound in layers as recommended in writing by patching compound manufacturer, but not less than 1/4 inch or more than 2 inches thick. Roughen surface of each layer to provide a key for next layer.
 - 1. Simple Details: Trowel, scrape, or carve surface of patch to match texture and surrounding surface plane or contour of the stone. Shape and finish surface before or after curing, as determined by testing, to best match existing stone.
 - 2. Carved Details: Build patch up 1/4 inch above surrounding stone, and carve surface to match adjoining stone after patching compound has hardened.
- G. Keep each layer damp for 72 hours or until patching compound has set.
- H. Remove and replace patches with hairline cracks or that show separation from stone at edges, and those that do not match adjoining stone in color or texture.

3.9 FINAL CLEANING

- A. After mortar has fully hardened, thoroughly clean exposed stone surfaces of excess mortar and foreign matter; use wood scrapers, stiff-nylon or -fiber brushes, and clean water applied by low-pressure spray.
 - 1. Do not use metal scrapers or brushes.
 - 2. Do not use acidic or alkaline cleaners.
- B. Clean adjacent nonstone surfaces. Use detergent and soft brushes or cloths.
- C. Clean mortar and debris from roof; remove debris from gutters and downspouts. Rinse off roof and flush gutters and downspouts.
- D. Remove masking materials, leaving no residues that could trap dirt.

3.10 STONE-WASTE DISPOSAL

- A. Salvageable Materials: Unless otherwise indicated, excess stone materials are Contractor's property.
- B. Stone Waste: Remove stone waste and legally dispose of off Owner's property.

END OF SECTION 040342

SECTION 040343 - HISTORIC STONE MASONRY REPOINTING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes historic treatment work consisting of repointing stone masonry joints with mortar .
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 013591 "Historic Treatment Procedures" for general historic treatment requirements.

1.3 UNIT PRICES

- A. Work of this Section is affected by unit prices specified in Section 012200 "Unit Prices."
 - 1. Unit prices apply to authorized work covered by estimated quantities.
 - 2. Unit prices apply to additions to and deletions from Work as authorized by Change Orders.

1.4 DEFINITIONS

- A. Low-Pressure Spray:
 - 1. Pressure: 100 to 400 psi.
 - 2. Flow Rate: 4 to 6 gpm.
- B. Rift: The most pronounced direction of splitting or cleavage of a stone. Rift may be obscure in igneous rocks such as granite. Often it is obvious, as with bedding planes in many sedimentary stones.

1.5 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference on historic masonry repair and repointing at Project site .
 - 1. Review minutes of Preliminary Historic Treatment Conference that pertain to masonry historic treatment and repointing.

2. Review methods and procedures related to repointing historic stone masonry including, but not limited to, the following:
 - a. Verify historic treatment specialist's personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
 - b. Materials, material application, sequencing, tolerances, and required clearances.
 - c. Quality-control program.
 - d. Fire-protection plan.
 - e. Stone historic treatment program.

1.6 SEQUENCING AND SCHEDULING

- A. Order sand and gray portland cement for pointing mortar immediately after approval of Samples . Take delivery of and store at Project site a sufficient quantity to complete Project.
- B. Work Sequence: Perform stone historic treatment work in the following sequence, which includes work specified in this and other Sections:
 1. Remove plant growth.
 2. Rake out mortar from joints surrounding stone to be replaced and from joints adjacent to stone repairs along joints.
 3. Repair stonework, including replacing existing stone with new stone.
 4. Rake out mortar from joints to be repointed.
 5. Point mortar joints.
 6. After repairs and repointing have been completed and cured, perform a final cleaning to remove residues from this work.
- C. As scaffolding is removed, patch anchor holes used to attach scaffolding. Patch holes in stone according to Section 040342 "Historic Stone Masonry Repair." Patch holes in mortar joints according to Part 3 "Repointing" Article.

1.7 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
 2. Include recommendations for product application and use.
 3. Include test data substantiating that products comply with requirements.
- B. Samples for Initial Selection: For the following:
 1. Pointing Mortar: Submit sets of mortar for pointing in the form of sample mortar strips, 6 inches long by 1/4 inch wide, set in aluminum or plastic channels.
 - a. Have each set contain a close color range of at least three Samples of different mixes of colored sands and cements that produce a mortar matching existing, cleaned mortar when cured and dry.
 - b. Submit with precise measurements on ingredients, proportions, gradations, and sources of colored sands from which each Sample was made.
 2. Include similar Samples of accessories involving color selection.

1.8 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For historic treatment specialist including field supervisors and workers .
- B. Quality-control program.
- C. Stone historic treatment program.

1.9 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Historic Treatment Specialist Qualifications: A qualified historic masonry repointing specialist. Experience in pointing or repointing only new or nonhistoric masonry is insufficient experience for masonry historic treatment work.
- B. Quality-Control Program: Prepare a written quality-control program for this Project to systematically demonstrate the ability of personnel to properly follow methods and use materials and tools without damaging masonry. Include provisions for supervising worker performance and preventing damage.
- C. Stone Historic Treatment Program: Prepare a written, detailed description of materials, methods, equipment, and sequence of operations to be used for each phase of the historic treatment work, including protection of surrounding materials and Project site.
 - 1. Include methods for keeping pointing mortar damp during curing period.
 - 2. If materials and methods other than those indicated are proposed for any phase of historic treatment work, add to the quality-control program a written description of such materials and methods, including evidence of successful use on comparable projects, and demonstrations to show their effectiveness for this Project.

1.10 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver packaged materials to Project site in manufacturer's original and unopened containers, labeled with manufacturer's name and type of products.
- B. Store cementitious materials on elevated platforms, under cover, and in a dry location. Do not use cementitious materials that have become damp.
- C. Store hydrated lime in manufacturer's original and unopened containers. Discard lime if containers have been damaged or have been opened for more than two days.
- D. Store sand where grading and other required characteristics can be maintained and contamination avoided.

1.11 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Weather Limitations: Proceed with installation only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit repointing work to be performed according to product manufacturers' written instructions and specified requirements.

- B. Temperature Limits: Repoint mortar joints only when air temperature is between 40 and 90 deg F and is predicted to remain so for at least seven days after completion of the Work unless otherwise indicated.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of material for repointing historic masonry (cement, sand, etc.) from single source with resources to provide materials of consistent quality in appearance and physical properties.

2.2 MORTAR MATERIALS

- A. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150/C 150M, Type I or Type II; white or gray or both, where required for color matching of mortar.
 - 1. Provide cement containing not more than 0.60 percent total alkali when tested according to ASTM C 114.
- B. Hydrated Lime: ASTM C 207, Type S.
- C. Mortar Sand: ASTM C 144 unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Match size, texture, and gradation of existing mortar sand as closely as possible. Blend several sands if necessary to achieve suitable match.
 - 2. Color: Natural sand or ground marble, granite, or other sound stone of color necessary to produce required mortar color.
 - 3. Provide sand with rounded edges.
- D. Water: ASTM C 270, potable.

2.3 ACCESSORY MATERIALS

- A. Joint-Sealant Backing:
 - 1. Cylindrical Sealant Backings: ASTM C 1330, Type C (closed-cell material with a surface skin) , and of size and density to control sealant depth and otherwise contribute to producing optimum sealant performance.
 - 2. Bond-Breaker Tape: Polyethylene tape or other plastic tape recommended in writing by sealant manufacturer for preventing sealant from adhering to rigid, inflexible joint-filler materials or joint surfaces at back of joint where such adhesion would result in sealant failure. Provide self-adhesive tape where applicable.
- B. Masking Tape: Nonstaining, nonabsorbent material; compatible with mortar, joint primers, sealants, and surfaces adjacent to joints; and that easily comes off entirely, including adhesive.

2.4 MORTAR MIXES

- A. Measurement and Mixing: Measure cementitious materials and sand in a dry condition by volume or equivalent weight. Do not measure by shovel; use known measure. Mix materials in a clean, mechanical batch mixer.
- B. Do not use admixtures in mortar unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Mixes: Mix mortar materials in the following proportions:
 - 1. Pointing Mortar by Type: ASTM C 270, Proportion Specification, Type N unless otherwise indicated; with cementitious material limited to portland cement and lime.
 - 2. Pointing Mortar by Property: ASTM C 270, Property Specification, Type N unless otherwise indicated; with cementitious material limited to portland cement and lime.
 - 3. Pointing Mortar by ASTM C 1713 Composition: ASTM C 1713, with binder material limited to portland cement and lime , and with a volume ratio of 1 part portland cement, 1 part lime, and 6 parts sand .

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PROTECTION

- A. Prevent mortar from staining face of surrounding stone and other surfaces.
 - 1. Cover sills, ledges, and other projecting items to protect them from mortar droppings.
 - 2. Keep wall area wet below rebuilding and pointing work to discourage mortar from adhering.
 - 3. Immediately remove mortar splatters in contact with exposed stone and other surfaces.
- B. Remove gutters and downspouts and associated hardware adjacent to immediate work area and store during stone repointing work.

3.2 STONE REPOINTING, GENERAL

- A. Have repointing work performed only by qualified historic treatment specialist.
- B. Appearance Standard: Repointed surfaces are to have a uniform appearance as viewed from 50 feet away by Architect.

3.3 REPOINTING : ST-2

- A. Rake out and repoint joints to the following extent:
 - 1. All joints in areas indicated.
 - 2. Joints at locations of the following defects:
 - a. Holes and missing mortar.
 - b. Cracks that can be penetrated 1/4 inch or more by a knife blade 0.027 inch thick.
 - c. Cracks 1/8 inch or more in width and of any depth.
 - d. Hollow-sounding joints when tapped by metal object.

- e. Deterioration to point that mortar can be easily removed by hand, without tools.
 - f. Joints filled with substances other than mortar.
- B. Do not rake out and repoint joints where not required.
- C. Rake out joints as follows, according to procedures demonstrated in approved mockup:
- 1. Remove mortar from joints to depth of not less than 3/4 inch and not less than that required to expose sound, unweathered mortar . Do not remove unsound mortar more than 2 inches deep; consult Architect for direction.
 - 2. Remove mortar from stone surfaces within raked-out joints to provide reveals with square backs and to expose stone for contact with pointing mortar. Brush, vacuum, or flush joints to remove dirt and loose debris.
 - 3. Do not spall edges of stone units or widen joints. Replace or patch damaged stone units as directed by Architect.
 - a. Cut out center of mortar bed joints using angle grinders with diamond-impregnated metal blades. Remove remaining mortar in bed joints and mortar in head joints by hand with chisel and resilient mallet. Strictly adhere to approved quality-control program.
- D. Notify Architect of unforeseen detrimental conditions, including voids in mortar joints, cracks, loose stone, rotted wood, rusted metal, and other deteriorated items.
- E. Pointing with Mortar:
- 1. Rinse joint surfaces with water to remove dust and mortar particles. Time rinsing application so, at time of pointing, joint surfaces are damp but free of standing water. If rinse water dries, dampen joint surfaces before pointing.
 - 2. Apply pointing mortar first to areas where existing mortar was removed to depths greater than surrounding areas. Apply in layers not greater than 3/8 inch until a uniform depth is formed. Fully compact each layer thoroughly, and allow it to become thumbprint hard before applying next layer.
 - 3. After deep areas have been filled to same depth as remaining joints, point joints by placing mortar in layers not greater than 3/8 inch. Fully compact each layer, and allow it to become thumbprint hard before applying next layer. Where existing stone has worn or rounded edges, slightly recess finished mortar surface below face of stone to avoid widened joint faces. Take care not to spread mortar beyond joint edges onto exposed stone surfaces or to featheredge the mortar.
 - 4. When mortar is thumbprint hard, tool joints to match original appearance of joints as demonstrated in approved mockup. Remove excess mortar from edge of joint by brushing.
 - 5. Cure mortar by maintaining in thoroughly damp condition for at least 72 consecutive hours, including weekends and holidays.
 - a. Acceptable curing methods include covering with wet burlap and plastic sheeting, periodic hand misting, and periodic mist spraying using system of pipes, mist heads, and timers.
 - b. Adjust curing methods to ensure that pointing mortar is damp throughout its depth without eroding surface mortar.
 - 6. Hairline cracking within the mortar or mortar separation at edge of a joint is unacceptable. Remove mortar and repoint.
- F. Where repointing work precedes cleaning of existing stone, allow mortar to harden at least 30 days before beginning cleaning work.

3.4 FINAL CLEANING

- A. After mortar has fully hardened, thoroughly clean exposed stone surfaces of excess mortar and foreign matter; use wood scrapers, stiff-nylon or -fiber brushes, and clean water applied by low-pressure spray.
 - 1. Do not use metal scrapers or brushes.
 - 2. Do not use acidic or alkaline cleaners.
- B. Clean adjacent nonstone surfaces. Use detergent and soft brushes or cloths.
- C. Clean mortar and debris from roof; remove debris from gutters and downspouts. Rinse off roof and flush gutters and downspouts.
- D. Remove masking materials, leaving no residues that could trap dirt.

END OF SECTION 040343

SECTION 047200 - CAST STONE MASONRY

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Decorative elements.
2. Mortar materials.
3. Accessories.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. For cast stone units, include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.

B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details for cast stone units. Include dimensions, details of reinforcement and anchorages if any, and indication of finished faces.

1. Include building elevations showing layout of units and locations of joints and anchors.

C. Samples for Verification:

1. For each color and texture of cast stone required, 6 inches square in size.
2. For each trim shape required, 6 inches in length.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For manufacturer .

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Manufacturer Qualifications: A qualified manufacturer of cast stone units similar to those indicated for this Project, that has sufficient production capacity to manufacture required units, and is a plant certified by CSI or APA .

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Coordinate delivery of cast stone with unit masonry work to avoid delaying the Work and to minimize the need for on-site storage.

B. Pack, handle, and ship cast stone units in suitable packs or pallets.

1. Lift with wide-belt slings; do not use wire rope or ropes that might cause staining. Move cast stone units if required, using dollies with wood supports.
 2. Store cast stone units on wood skids or pallets with nonstaining, waterproof covers, securely tied. Arrange to distribute weight evenly and to prevent damage to units. Ventilate under covers to prevent condensation.
- C. Store cementitious materials on elevated platforms, under cover, and in a dry location. Do not use cementitious materials that have become damp.
- D. Store mortar aggregates where grading and other required characteristics can be maintained and contamination can be avoided.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Source Limitations for Cast Stone: Obtain cast stone units from single source from single manufacturer.
- B. Source Limitations for Mortar Materials: Obtain mortar ingredients of a uniform quality, including color, from one manufacturer for each cementitious component and from one source or producer for each aggregate.

2.2 CAST STONE MATERIALS

- A. General: Comply with ASTM C1364.
- B. Portland Cement: ASTM C150/C150M, Type I or Type III, containing not more than 0.60 percent total alkali when tested according to ASTM C114. Provide natural color or white cement as required to produce cast stone color indicated.
- C. Coarse Aggregates: Granite, quartz, or limestone complying with ASTM C33/C33M; gradation and colors as needed to produce required cast stone textures and colors.
- D. Fine Aggregates: Natural sand or crushed stone complying with ASTM C33/C33M, gradation and colors as needed to produce required cast stone textures and colors.
- E. Color Pigment: ASTM C979/C979M, synthetic mineral-oxide pigments or colored water-reducing admixtures; color stable, free of carbon black, nonfading, and resistant to lime and other alkalis.
- F. Admixtures: Use only admixtures specified or approved in writing by Architect.
1. Do not use admixtures that contain more than 0.1 percent water-soluble chloride ions by mass of cementitious materials. Do not use admixtures containing calcium chloride.
 2. Use only admixtures that are certified by manufacturer to be compatible with cement and other admixtures used.
 3. Air-Entraining Admixture: ASTM C260/C260M. Add to mixes for units exposed to the exterior at manufacturer's prescribed rate to result in an air content of 4 to 6 percent, except do not add to zero-slump concrete mixes.

4. Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C494/C494M, Type A.

G. Reinforcement:

1. Deformed steel bars complying with ASTM A615/A615M, Grade 40. Use galvanized or epoxy-coated reinforcement when covered with less than 1-1/2 inches of cast stone material.
 - a. Epoxy Coating: ASTM A775/A775M.
 - b. Galvanized Coating: ASTM A767/A767M.
2. Galvanized-Steel, Welded-Wire Reinforcement: ASTM A1064/A1064M, plain, fabricated from galvanized-steel wire into flat sheets.
3. Fiber Reinforcement: ASTM C1116/C1116M.

- H. Embedded Anchors and Other Inserts: Fabricated from stainless steel complying with ASTM A240/A240M, ASTM A276/A276M, or ASTM A666, Type 304 .

2.3 CAST STONE UNITS

A. Cast Stone Units: Comply with ASTM C1364.

1. Units are manufactured using the manufacturer's selected method.
2. Trim units including items as indicated on Drawings.
3. Decorative elements including items as indicated on Drawings.

B. Fabricate units with sharp arris and accurately reproduced details, with indicated texture on all exposed surfaces unless otherwise indicated.

1. Slope exposed horizontal surfaces 1:12 to drain unless otherwise indicated.
2. Provide raised fillets at backs of sills and at ends indicated to be built into jambs.
3. Provide drips on projecting elements unless otherwise indicated.

C. Fabrication Tolerances:

1. Variation in Cross Section: Do not vary from indicated dimensions by more than 1/8 inch.
2. Variation in Length: Do not vary from indicated dimensions by more than 1/360 of the length of unit or 1/8 inch, whichever is greater, but in no case by more than 1/4 inch.
3. Warp, Bow, and Twist: Not to exceed 1/360 of the length of unit or 1/8 inch, whichever is greater.
4. Location of Grooves, False Joints, Holes, Anchorages, and Similar Features: Do not vary from indicated position by more than 1/8 inch on formed surfaces of units and 3/8 inch on unformed surfaces.

D. Cure Units as Follows:

1. Cure units in enclosed, moist curing room at 95 percent relative humidity and temperature of 100 deg F for 12 hours or 70 deg F for 16 hours.
2. Keep units damp and continue curing to comply with one of the following:
 - a. No fewer than five days at mean daily temperature of 70 deg F or above.
 - b. No fewer than seven days at mean daily temperature of 50 deg F or above.

E. Acid etch units after curing to remove cement film from surfaces to be exposed to view.

- F. Colors and Textures: Match existing units .

2.4 MORTAR MATERIALS

- A. Portland Cement: ASTM C150/C150M, Type I or II, except Type III may be used for cold-weather construction. Provide natural color or white cement as required to produce mortar color indicated.
- B. Hydrated Lime: ASTM C207, Type S.
- C. Portland Cement-Lime Mix: Packaged blend of portland cement and hydrated lime containing no other ingredients.
- D. Aggregate for Mortar: ASTM C144.
 - 1. For mortar that is exposed to view, use washed aggregate consisting of natural sand or crushed stone.
 - 2. For joints less than 1/4 inch thick, use aggregate graded with 100 percent passing the No. 16 sieve.
 - 3. Colored Aggregates: Natural sand or crushed stone of color necessary to produce required mortar color.
- E. Water: Potable.

2.5 ACCESSORIES

- A. Anchors: Type and size indicated, fabricated from Type 304 stainless steel complying with ASTM A240/A240M, ASTM A276/A276M, or ASTM A666 .
- B. Dowels: 1/2-inch- diameter round bars, fabricated from Type 304 stainless steel complying with ASTM A240/A240M, ASTM A276/A276M, or ASTM A666 .

2.6 MORTAR MIXES

- A. Do not use admixtures including pigments, air-entraining agents, accelerators, retarders, water-repellent agents, antifreeze compounds, or other admixtures unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Do not use calcium chloride in mortar or grout.
 - 2. Use portland cement-lime mortar unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Comply with ASTM C270, Proportion Specification.
 - 1. For setting mortar, use Type N.
 - 2. For pointing mortar, use Type N .
- C. Colored-Aggregate Mortar: Produce required mortar color by using colored aggregates and natural color or white cement as necessary to produce required mortar color.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 SETTING CAST STONE IN MORTAR

- A. Set cast stone as indicated on Drawings. Set units accurately in locations indicated, with edges and faces aligned according to established relationships and indicated tolerances.
 - 1. Install anchors, supports, fasteners, and other attachments indicated or necessary to secure units in place.
 - 2. Coordinate installation of cast stone with installation of flashing specified in other Sections.
- B. Wet joint surfaces thoroughly before applying mortar or setting in mortar.
- C. Set units in full bed of mortar with full head joints unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Set units with joints 1/4 to 3/8 inch wide unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. Build anchors and ties into mortar joints as units are set.
 - 3. Fill dowel holes and anchor slots with mortar.
 - 4. Keep head joints in copings and between other units with exposed horizontal surfaces open to receive sealant.
- D. Rake out joints for pointing with mortar to depths of not less than 3/4 inch. Rake joints to uniform depths with square bottoms and clean sides. Scrub faces of units to remove excess mortar as joints are raked.
- E. Point mortar joints by placing and compacting mortar in layers not greater than 3/8 inch. Compact each layer thoroughly and allow it to become thumbprint hard before applying next layer.
- F. Tool exposed joints slightly concave when thumbprint hard. Use a smooth plastic jointer larger than joint thickness.

3.3 INSTALLATION TOLERANCES

- A. Variation from Plumb: Do not exceed , 1/4 inch in 20 ft., or 1/2 inch maximum.
- B. Variation from Level: Do not exceed , 1/4 inch in 20 ft., or 1/2 inch maximum.
- C. Variation in Joint Width: Do not vary joint thickness more than 1/8 inch in 36 inches or one-fourth of nominal joint width, whichever is less.

- D. Variation in Plane between Adjacent Surfaces (Lipping): Do not vary from flush alignment with adjacent units or adjacent surfaces indicated to be flush with units by more than 1/16 inch, except where variation is due to warpage of units within tolerances specified.

3.4 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Remove and replace stained and otherwise damaged units and units not matching approved Samples. Cast stone may be repaired if methods and results are approved by Architect.
- B. Replace units in a manner that results in cast stone matching approved Samples, complying with other requirements, and showing no evidence of replacement.
- C. In-Progress Cleaning: Clean cast stone as work progresses.
 - 1. Remove mortar fins and smears before tooling joints.
 - 2. Remove excess sealant immediately, including spills, smears, and spatter.
- D. Final Cleaning: After mortar is thoroughly set and cured, clean exposed cast stone as follows:
 - 1. Remove large mortar particles by hand with wooden paddles and nonmetallic scrape hoes or chisels.
 - 2. Test cleaning methods on sample; leave one sample uncleaned for comparison purposes. Obtain Architect's approval of sample cleaning before proceeding with cleaning of cast stone.
 - 3. Protect adjacent surfaces from contact with cleaner by covering them with liquid strippable masking agent or polyethylene film and waterproof masking tape.
 - 4. Wet surfaces with water before applying cleaners; remove cleaners promptly by rinsing thoroughly with clear water.
 - 5. Clean cast stone by methods described in Cast Stone Institute Technical Bulletin #39.

END OF SECTION 047200

SECTION 061000 - ROUGH CARPENTRY

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Framing with dimension lumber.
2. Framing with timber.
3. Framing with engineered wood products.
4. Shear wall panels.
5. Rooftop equipment bases and support curbs.
6. Wood blocking [, **cants,**] and nailers.
7. Wood furring [**and grounds**].
8. Wood sleepers.
9. Utility shelving.
10. Plywood backing panels.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 061300 "Heavy Timber Construction."
2. Section 061533 "Wood Patio Decking" for elevated decks, including support framing.
3. Section 061600 "Sheathing" for sheathing, subflooring, and underlayment.
4. Section 061753 "Shop-Fabricated Wood Trusses" for wood trusses made from dimension lumber.
5. Section 064013 "Exterior Architectural Woodwork" for exterior wood stairs and railings.
6. Section 064023 "Interior Architectural Woodwork" for interior wood stairs and railings.
7. Section 313116 "Termite Control" for site application of borate treatment to wood framing.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Boards or Strips: Lumber of less than 2 inches nominal size in least dimension.
- B. Dimension Lumber: Lumber of 2 inches nominal size or greater but less than 5 inches nominal size in least dimension.
- C. Exposed Framing: Framing not concealed by other construction.
- D. OSB: Oriented strand board.
- E. Timber: Lumber of 5 inches nominal size or greater in least dimension.
- F. Lumber grading agencies, and abbreviations used to reference them, include the following:
1. NeLMA: Northeastern Lumber Manufacturers' Association.
 2. NLGA: National Lumber Grades Authority.
 3. SPIB: The Southern Pine Inspection Bureau.
 4. WCLIB: West Coast Lumber Inspection Bureau.

5. WWPA: Western Wood Products Association.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of process and factory-fabricated product. Indicate component materials and dimensions and include construction and application details.
 1. Include data for wood-preservative treatment from chemical treatment manufacturer and certification by treating plant that treated materials comply with requirements. Indicate type of preservative used and net amount of preservative retained.
 2. Include data for fire-retardant treatment from chemical treatment manufacturer and certification by treating plant that treated materials comply with requirements. Include physical properties of treated materials based on testing by a qualified independent testing agency.
 3. For fire-retardant treatments, include physical properties of treated lumber both before and after exposure to elevated temperatures, based on testing by a qualified independent testing agency according to ASTM D5664.
 4. For products receiving a waterborne treatment, include statement that moisture content of treated materials was reduced to levels specified before shipment to Project site.
- B. Sustainable Design Submittals:
 1. <Click to insert sustainable design text for regional materials.>
 2. <Click to insert sustainable design text for certified wood.>
 3. <Click to insert sustainable design text for certified wood.>
 4. <Click to insert sustainable design text for composite wood.>
 5. <Click to insert sustainable design text for installation adhesives.>
- C. Fastener Patterns: Full-size templates for fasteners in exposed framing.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Material Certificates:
 1. For dimension lumber specified to comply with minimum allowable unit stresses. Indicate species and grade selected for each use and design values approved by the ALSC Board of Review.
- B. Reports: For the following, from ICC-ES:
 1. Wood-preservative-treated wood.
 2. Fire-retardant-treated wood.
 3. Engineered wood products.
 4. Shear panels.
 5. Power-driven fasteners.
 6. Post-installed anchors.
 7. Metal framing anchors.
 8. Sill sealer gasket/termite barrier.
- C. Qualification Statements: For testing agency providing classification marking for fire-retardant treated material, an inspection agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction that

periodically performs inspections to verify that the material bearing the classification marking is representative of the material tested.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. <Click to insert sustainable design text for manufacturer qualifications.>
- B. <Click to insert sustainable design text for vendor qualifications.>

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Stack wood products flat with spacers beneath and between each bundle to provide air circulation. Protect wood products from weather by covering with waterproof sheeting, securely anchored. Provide for air circulation around stacks and under coverings.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 WOOD PRODUCTS, GENERAL

- A. <Click to insert sustainable design text for regional materials.>
- B. <Click to insert sustainable design text for certified wood.>
- C. Lumber: Comply with DOC PS 20 and applicable rules of grading agencies indicated. If no grading agency is indicated, comply with the applicable rules of any rules-writing agency certified by the ALSC Board of Review. Grade lumber by an agency certified by the ALSC Board of Review to inspect and grade lumber under the rules indicated.
 - 1. Factory mark each piece of lumber with grade stamp of grading agency.
 - 2. For exposed lumber indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, **[mark grade stamp on end or back of each piece] [or] [omit grade stamp and provide certificates of grade compliance issued by grading agency]**.
 - 3. Where nominal sizes are indicated, provide actual sizes required by DOC PS 20 for moisture content specified. Where actual sizes are indicated, they are minimum dressed sizes for dry wood products.
 - 4. Dress lumber, S4S, unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Maximum Moisture Content of Lumber:
 - 1. Boards: **[15] [19]** percent.
 - 2. Dimension Lumber: **[15 percent] [19 percent] [15 percent for 2-inch nominal thickness or less; 19 percent for more than 2-inch nominal thickness] [15 percent for 2-inch nominal thickness or less; no limit for more than 2-inch nominal thickness] [19 percent for 2-inch nominal thickness or less; no limit for more than 2-inch nominal thickness]** unless otherwise indicated.
 - 3. Timber. **[19 percent] [No limit]**.

- E. Engineered Wood Products: Acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction and for which current model code research or evaluation reports exist that show compliance with building code in effect for Project.
 - 1. Allowable design stresses, as published by manufacturer, are to meet or exceed those indicated. Manufacturer's published values are to be determined from empirical data or by rational engineering analysis and demonstrated by comprehensive testing performed by a qualified independent testing agency.

2.2 PRESERVATIVE TREATMENT

- A. Preservative Treatment by Pressure Process: AWWPA U1; Use Category UC2 [**for interior construction not in contact with ground, Use Category UC3b for exterior construction not in contact with ground, and Use Category UC4a for items in contact with ground**].
 - 1. Preservative Chemicals: Acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction and containing no arsenic or chromium. [**Do not use inorganic boron (SBX) for sill plates.**]
 - 2. For exposed items indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, chemical formulations are not to require incising, contain colorants, bleed through, or otherwise adversely affect finishes.
 - 3. After treatment, redry [**boards**] [**dimension lumber**] to 19 percent maximum moisture content.
- B. Kiln-dry lumber after treatment to a maximum moisture content of 19 percent. Do not use material that is warped or that does not comply with requirements for untreated material.
- C. Mark lumber with treatment quality mark of an inspection agency approved by the ALSC Board of Review.
 - 1. For exposed lumber indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, [**mark end or back of each piece**] [**or**] [**omit marking and provide certificates of treatment compliance issued by inspection agency**].
- D. Application: Treat [**all rough carpentry unless otherwise indicated.**] [**items indicated on Drawings, and the following:**]
 - 1. Wood cants, nailers, curbs, equipment support bases, blocking, stripping, and similar members in connection with roofing, flashing, vapor barriers, and waterproofing.
 - 2. Wood sills, sleepers, blocking, [**furring,**] [**stripping,**] and similar concealed members in contact with masonry or concrete.
 - 3. Wood framing and furring attached directly to the interior of below-grade exterior masonry or concrete walls.
 - 4. Wood framing members that are less than 18 inches above the ground in crawlspaces or unexcavated areas.
 - 5. Wood floor plates that are installed over concrete slabs-on-grade.
 - 6. **<Insert item>**.

2.3 FIRE-RETARDANT TREATMENT

- A. General: Where fire-retardant-treated materials are indicated, materials are to comply with requirements in this article, that are acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and with fire-

test-response characteristics specified as determined by testing identical products per test method indicated by a qualified testing agency.

- B. Fire-Retardant-Treated Lumber and Plywood by Pressure Process: Products with a flame-spread index of 25 or less when tested according to ASTM E84, and with no evidence of significant progressive combustion when the test is extended an additional 20 minutes, and with the flame front not extending more than 10.5 feet beyond the centerline of the burners at any time during the test.
 - 1. Treatment is not to promote corrosion of metal fasteners.
 - 2. Exterior Type: Treated materials are to comply with requirements specified above for fire-retardant-treated lumber and plywood by pressure process after being subjected to accelerated weathering according to ASTM D2898. Use for exterior locations and where indicated.
 - 3. Interior Type A: Treated materials are to have a moisture content of 28 percent or less when tested according to ASTM D3201/D3201M at 92 percent relative humidity. Use where exterior type is not indicated.
 - 4. Design Value Adjustment Factors: Treated lumber is to be tested according to ASTM D5664 and design value adjustment factors are to be calculated according to ASTM D6841. [**For enclosed roof framing, framing in attic spaces, and where high temperature fire-retardant treatment is indicated, provide material with adjustment factors of not less than 0.85 modulus of elasticity and 0.75 for extreme fiber in bending for Project's climatological zone.**]
- C. Kiln-dry lumber after treatment to maximum moisture content of 19 percent. [**Kiln-dry plywood after treatment to maximum moisture content of 15 percent.**]
- D. Identify fire-retardant-treated wood with appropriate classification marking of qualified testing agency.
 - 1. For exposed lumber indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, [**mark end or back of each piece**] [or] [**omit marking and provide certificates of treatment compliance issued by testing agency**].
- E. For exposed items indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, chemical formulations are not to bleed through, contain colorants, or otherwise adversely affect finishes.
- F. Application: Treat [**all rough carpentry unless otherwise indicated.**] [**items indicated on Drawings, and the following:**]
 - 1. Framing for raised platforms.
 - 2. Framing for stages.
 - 3. Concealed blocking.
 - 4. Framing for non-load-bearing partitions.
 - 5. Framing for non-load-bearing exterior walls.
 - 6. Roof construction.
 - 7. Plywood backing panels.
 - 8. **<Insert item>**.

2.4 DIMENSION LUMBER FRAMING

- A. Non-Load-Bearing Interior Partitions by Grade: [**Construction or No. 2**] [**Construction, Stud, or No. 3**] [**Standard, Stud, or No. 3**] grade.

1. Application: **[All interior partitions] [Interior partitions not indicated as load bearing].**
 2. Species:
 - a. Hem-fir (north); NLGA.
 - b. Southern pine or mixed southern pine; SPIB.
 - c. Spruce-pine-fir; NLGA.
 - d. Hem-fir; WCLIB, or WWPA.
 - e. Spruce-pine-fir (south); NeLMA, WCLIB, or WWPA.
 - f. Northern species; NLGA.
 - g. Eastern softwoods; NeLMA.
 - h. Western woods; WCLIB or WWPA.
- B. Load-Bearing Partitions by Grade: **[No. 2] [Construction or No. 2] [Construction, Stud, or No. 3] grade.**
1. Application: **[Exterior walls] [and] [interior load-bearing partitions].**
 2. Species:
 - a. Hem-fir (north); NLGA.
 - b. Southern pine; SPIB.
 - c. Douglas fir-larch; WCLIB or WWPA.
 - d. Southern pine or mixed southern pine; SPIB.
 - e. Spruce-pine-fir; NLGA.
 - f. Douglas fir-south; WWPA.
 - g. Hem-fir; WCLIB or WWPA.
 - h. Douglas fir-larch (north); NLGA.
 - i. Spruce-pine-fir (south); NeLMA, WCLIB, or WWPA.
- C. Machine Stress-Rated (MSR) Lumber Partitions: Any species of MSR dimension lumber with a grade of not less than **[2400f-2.0E] [2100f-1.8E] [1650f-1.5E] <Insert grade>.**
1. Application: **[Exterior walls] [and] [interior load-bearing partitions].**
- D. Load-Bearing Partitions by Performance: Any species and grade with a modulus of elasticity of at least **[1,500,000 psi] [1,300,000 psi] [1,100,000 psi] [1,000,000 psi] [900,000 psi]** and an extreme fiber stress in bending of at least **[1000 psi] [850 psi] [700 psi] [600 psi] [500 psi]** for 2-inch nominal thickness and 12-inch nominal width for single-member use.
1. Application: **[Exterior walls] [and] [interior load-bearing partitions].**
- E. Ceiling Joists: **[Construction or No. 2] [Construction, Stud, or No. 3] [Standard, Stud, or No. 3] grade.**
1. Species:
 - a. Hem-fir (north); NLGA.
 - b. Southern pine; SPIB.
 - c. Douglas fir-larch; WCLIB or WWPA.
 - d. Douglas fir-larch (north); NLGA.
 - e. Southern pine or mixed southern pine; SPIB.
 - f. Spruce-pine-fir; NLGA.
 - g. Hem-fir; WCLIB or WWPA.
 - h. Douglas fir-south; WWPA.
 - i. Spruce-pine-fir (south); NeLMA, WCLIB, or WWPA.
 - j. Northern species; NLGA.
 - k. Eastern softwoods; NeLMA.
 - l. Western woods; WCLIB or WWPA.

- F. Joists, Rafters, and Other Framing by Grade: [**Select Structural**] [**No. 1**] [**No. 2**] [**Construction or No. 2**] [**Construction, Stud, or No. 3**] grade.
1. Species:
 - a. Hem-fir (north); NLGA.
 - b. Southern pine; SPIB.
 - c. Douglas fir-larch; WCLIB or WWPA.
 - d. Southern pine or mixed southern pine; SPIB.
 - e. Spruce-pine-fir; NLGA.
 - f. Douglas fir-south; WWPA.
 - g. Hem-fir; WCLIB or WWPA.
 - h. Douglas fir-larch (north); NLGA.
 - i. Spruce-pine-fir (south); NeLMA, WCLIB, or WWPA.
- G. Joists, Rafters, and Other Framing by Performance: Any species and grade with a modulus of elasticity of at least [**1,500,000 psi**] [**1,300,000 psi**] [**1,100,000 psi**] [**1,000,000 psi**] [**900,000 psi**] and an extreme fiber stress in bending of at least [**1000 psi**] [**850 psi**] [**700 psi**] [**600 psi**] [**500 psi**] for 2-inch nominal thickness and 12-inch nominal width for single-member use.
- H. Exposed Framing [**Indicated to Receive a Stained or Natural Finish**]: Hand-select material for uniformity of appearance and freedom from characteristics, on exposed surfaces and edges, that would impair finish appearance, including decay, honeycomb, knot-holes, shake, splits, torn grain, and wane.
1. Species and Grade:
 - a. As indicated above for load-bearing construction of same type.
 - b. Hem-fir (north); [**Select Structural**] [**No. 1**] grade; NLGA.
 - c. Southern pine; [**Select Structural**] [**No. 1**] [**No. 2**] grade; SPIB.
 - d. Douglas fir-larch; [**Select Structural**] [**No. 1**] grade; WCLIB or WWPA.
 - e. Mixed southern pine; [**Select Structural**] [**No. 1**] [**No. 2**] grade; SPIB.
 - f. Spruce-pine-fir; [**Select Structural**] [**No. 1**] grade; NLGA.
 - g. Douglas fir-south; [**Select Structural**] [**No. 1**] grade; WWPA.
 - h. Hem-fir; [**Select Structural**] [**No. 1**] grade; WCLIB or WWPA.
 - i. Douglas fir-larch (north); [**Select Structural**] [**No. 1**] grade; NLGA.
 - j. Spruce-pine-fir (south); [**Select Structural**] [**No. 1**] grade; NeLMA, WCLIB, or WWPA.
 - k. Eastern hemlock-balsam fir or eastern hemlock-tamarack; [**Select Structural**] [**No. 1**] grade; NeLMA.
 - l. Beech-birch-hickory; [**Select Structural**] [**No. 1**] grade; NeLMA.
 - m. Northern red oak; [**Select Structural**] [**No. 1**] grade; NeLMA.
 - n. Redwood; [**Clear Heart Structural**] [**Clear Structural**] [**Select Structural**] [**No. 1**] grade; RIS.
 - o. Mixed oak; [**Select Structural**] [**No. 1**] grade; NeLMA.
 - p. Mixed maple; [**Select Structural**] [**No. 1**] grade; NeLMA.
 - q. Western cedars; [**Select Structural**] [**No. 1**] grade; WCLIB or WWPA.

2.5 TIMBER FRAMING

- A. Comply with the following requirements, according to grading rules of grading agency indicated:
1. Species and Grade:
 - a. Douglas fir-larch, Douglas fir-larch (north), or Douglas fir-south; [**Select Structural**] [**No. 1**] grade; NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA.

- b. Eastern hemlock, eastern hemlock-tamarack, or eastern hemlock-tamarack (north); [**Select Structural**] [**No. 1**] grade; NeLMA or NLGA.
 - c. Hem-fir or hem-fir (north); [**Select Structural**] [**No. 1**] grade; NLGA, WCLIB, or WHPA.
 - d. Mixed maple; [**Select Structural**] [**No. 1**] grade; NeLMA.
 - e. Mixed oak; [**Select Structural**] [**No. 1**] grade; NeLMA.
 - f. Southern pine; [**Select Structural**] [**No. 1**] grade; SPIB.
2. Maximum Moisture Content: [20] [23] <Insert number> percent.
 3. Additional Restriction: Free of heart centers.

2.6 ENGINEERED WOOD PRODUCTS

- A. <Click to insert sustainable design text for composite wood products.>
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of engineered wood product from single source from a single manufacturer.
- C. Laminated-Veneer Lumber: Structural composite lumber made from wood veneers with grain primarily parallel to member lengths, evaluated and monitored according to ASTM D5456 and manufactured with an exterior-type adhesive complying with ASTM D2559.
 1. <Click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>
 2. Extreme Fiber Stress in Bending, Edgewise: [3100 psi] [2900 psi] [2600 psi] [2250 psi] <Insert value> for 12-inch nominal- depth members.
 3. Modulus of Elasticity, Edgewise: [2,000,000 psi] [1,800,000 psi] [1,500,000 psi] <Insert value>.
 4. Horizontal Shear: [285 psi] [225 psi] <Insert value>.
 5. Tension Parallel to Grain: [1950 psi] [1500 psi] [1100 psi] <Insert value>.
- D. Moisture Protection:
 1. For western species (Douglas fir/hemlock), factory end and edge seal laminated veneer lumber with opaque moisture barrier.
 2. For southern and eastern species (southern yellow pine, yellow poplar), factory seal laminated veneer lumber on face, edge, and ends.
- E. Parallel-Strand Lumber: Structural composite lumber made from wood strand elements with grain primarily parallel to member lengths, evaluated and monitored according to ASTM D5456 and manufactured with an exterior-type adhesive complying with ASTM D2559.
 1. <Click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>
 2. Extreme Fiber Stress in Bending, Edgewise: 2900 psi for 12-inch nominal- depth members.
 3. Modulus of Elasticity, Edgewise: 2,200,000 psi.
- F. Wood I-Joists: Prefabricated units, I-shaped in cross section, made with solid or structural composite lumber flanges and wood-based structural panel webs, let into and bonded to flanges. Comply with material requirements of and with structural capacities established and monitored according to ASTM D5055.
 1. <Click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>

2. Web Material: **[Either OSB or plywood, complying with DOC PS 1 or DOC PS 2, Exposure 1] [Plywood, complying with DOC PS 1 or DOC PS 2, Exposure 1] [Plywood, complying with DOC PS 1, Exterior grade].**
 3. Structural Properties: Depths and design values not less than those indicated.
 4. Comply with APA PRI-400. Factory mark I-joists with APA-EWS trademark indicating nominal joist depth, joist class, span ratings, mill identification, and compliance with APA-EWS standard.
- G. Rim Boards: Product designed to be used as a load-bearing member and to brace wood I-joists at bearing ends, complying with research or evaluation report for I-joists.
1. Manufacturer: Provide products by same manufacturer as I-joists.
 2. Material: **[All-veneer product] [glued-laminated wood] [or] [product made from any combination solid lumber, wood strands, and veneers].**
 3. Thickness: **[1 inch] [1-1/8 inches] [1-1/4 inches].**
 4. Comply with APA PRR-401, **[rim board] [rim board plus]** grade. Factory mark rim boards with APA-EWS trademark indicating thickness, grade, and compliance with APA-EWS standard.
- H. Insulated Rim Boards: Insulated product designed to be used as a load-bearing member and to brace wood I-joists at bearing ends, complying with research/evaluation report for I-joists.
1. Manufacturer: Provide products by same manufacturer as I-joists.
 2. Rim Board Material: **[All-veneer product] [glued-laminated wood] [or] [product made from any combination solid lumber, wood strands, and veneers].**
 3. Rim Board Thickness: **[1 inch] [1-1/8 inches] [1-1/4 inches].**
 4. Insulation: 1-1/2-inch- thick polyisocyanurate foam complying with ASTM C1289.
 5. Inside Facing: 7/16-inch- thick OSB.
 6. Comply with APA PRR-401, **[rim board] [rim board plus]** grade. Factory mark rim boards with APA-EWS trademark indicating thickness, grade, and compliance with APA-EWS standard.

2.7 SHEAR WALL PANELS

- A. [<Click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
- B. Wood-Framed Shear Wall Panels: Prefabricated assembly consisting of wood perimeter framing, tie downs, and Exposure I, Structural I plywood or OSB sheathing.
- C. Steel-Framed Shear Wall Panels: Prefabricated assembly consisting of cold-formed galvanized-steel panel, steel top and bottom plates, and wood studs.
- D. Allowable design loads, as published by manufacturer, are to meet or exceed those **[indicated] [of basis-of-design products] [of products of manufacturers listed]**. Manufacturer's published values are to be determined from empirical data or by rational engineering analysis and demonstrated by comprehensive testing performed by a qualified independent testing agency.

2.8 MISCELLANEOUS LUMBER

- A. Provide miscellaneous lumber indicated and lumber for support or attachment of other construction, including the following:
1. Blocking.
 2. Nailers.
 3. Rooftop equipment bases and support curbs.
 4. Cants.
 5. Furring.
 6. Grounds.
 7. Utility shelving.
- B. Dimension Lumber Items: [**Construction or No. 2**] [**Standard, Stud, or No. 3**] grade lumber of [**any species.**] [**any of the following species:**] [**the following species:**]
1. Hem-fir (north); NLGA.
 2. Mixed southern pine or southern pine; SPIB.
 3. Spruce-pine-fir; NLGA.
 4. Hem-fir; WCLIB or WWPA.
 5. Spruce-pine-fir (south); NeLMA, WCLIB, or WWPA.
 6. Western woods; WCLIB or WWPA.
 7. Northern species; NLGA.
 8. Eastern softwoods; NeLMA.
- C. Utility Shelving: Lumber with [**15**] [**19**] percent maximum moisture content of [**any of the following**] [**the following**] species and grades:
1. Eastern white pine, Idaho white, lodgepole, ponderosa, or sugar pine; [**Premium or No. 2 Common (Sterling)**] [**Standard or No. 3 Common**] grade; NeLMA, NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA.
 2. Mixed southern pine or southern pine; No. [**1**] [**2**] grade; SPIB.
 3. Hem-fir or hem-fir (north); [**Select Merchantable or No. 1 Common**] [**Construction or No. 2 Common**] grade; NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA.
 4. Spruce-pine-fir (south) or spruce-pine-fir; [**Select Merchantable or No. 1 Common**] [**Construction or No. 2 Common**] grade; NeLMA, NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA.
- D. Concealed Boards: [**15**] [**19**] percent maximum moisture content and [**any of**]the following species and grades:
1. Mixed southern pine or southern pine; No. [**2**] [**3**] grade; SPIB.
 2. Hem-fir or hem-fir (north); [**Construction or No. 2 Common**] [**Standard or No. 3 Common**] grade; NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA.
 3. Spruce-pine-fir (south) or spruce-pine-fir; [**Construction or No. 2 Common**] [**Standard or No. 3 Common**] grade; NeLMA, NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA.
 4. Eastern softwoods; No. [**2**] [**3**] Common grade; NeLMA.
 5. Northern species; No. [**2**] [**3**] Common grade; NLGA.
 6. Western woods; [**Construction or No. 2 Common**] [**Standard or No. 3 Common**] grade; WCLIB or WWPA.
- E. For blocking not used for attachment of other construction, Utility, Stud, or No. 3 grade lumber of any species may be used provided that it is cut and selected to eliminate defects that will interfere with its attachment and purpose.

- F. For blocking and nailers used for attachment of other construction, select and cut lumber to eliminate knots and other defects that will interfere with attachment of other work.
- G. For furring strips for installing plywood or hardboard paneling, select boards with no knots capable of producing bent-over nails and damage to paneling.

2.9 PLYWOOD BACKING PANELS

- A. Equipment Backing Panels: Plywood, DOC PS 1, [**Exterior, A-C**] [**Exterior, C-C Plugged**] [**Exposure 1, C-D Plugged**] , [**fire-retardant treated,**] in thickness indicated or, if not indicated, not less than [**1/2-inch**] [**3/4-inch**] nominal thickness.

2.10 FASTENERS

- A. General: Fasteners are to be of size and type indicated and comply with requirements specified in this article for material and manufacture. Provide nails or screws, in sufficient length, to penetrate not less than 1-1/2 inches into wood substrate.
 - 1. Where rough carpentry is exposed to weather, in ground contact, pressure-preservative treated, or in area of high relative humidity, provide fasteners [**with hot-dip zinc coating complying with ASTM A153/A153M or ASTM F2329**] [**of Type 304 stainless steel**].
 - 2. For pressure-preservative-treated wood, use stainless steel fasteners.
 - 3. For redwood, use [**brass/bronze**] [**stainless steel**] [**hot-dip galvanized-steel**] fasteners.
- B. Nails, Brads, and Staples: ASTM F1667.
- C. Power-Driven Fasteners: Fastener systems with an evaluation report acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, based on ICC-ES AC70.
- D. Post-Installed Anchors: Fastener systems with an evaluation report acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, based on [**ICC-ES AC01**] [**ICC-ES AC58**] [**ICC-ES AC193**] [**or**] [**ICC-ES AC308**] as appropriate for the substrate.

2.11 METAL FRAMING ANCHORS

- A. <Click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>
- B. Allowable design loads, as published by manufacturer, are to meet or exceed those [**indicated**] [**of basis-of-design products**] [**of products of manufacturers listed**]. Manufacturer's published values are to be determined from empirical data or by rational engineering analysis and demonstrated by comprehensive testing performed by a qualified independent testing agency. Framing anchors are to be punched for fasteners adequate to withstand same loads as framing anchors.
- C. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: Hot-dip, zinc-coated steel sheet complying with ASTM A653/A653M, G60 coating designation.
 - 1. Use for interior locations unless otherwise indicated.

- D. Hot-Dip, Heavy-Galvanized Steel Sheet: ASTM A653/A653M; structural steel (SS), high-strength low-alloy steel Type A (HSLAS Type A), or high-strength low-alloy steel Type B (HSLAS Type B); G185 coating designation; and not less than 0.036 inch thick.
1. Use for wood-preserved-treated lumber and where indicated.
- E. Stainless Steel Sheet: ASTM A240/A240M or ASTM A666, **[Type 304] [Type 316]**.
1. Use for exterior locations and where indicated.
- F. Joist Hangers: U-shaped joist hangers with 2-inch- long seat and 1-1/4-inch- wide nailing flanges at least 85 percent of joist depth.
1. Thickness: **[0.050 inch] [0.062 inch]**.
- G. I-Joist Hangers: U-shaped joist hangers with 2-inch- long seat and 1-1/4-inch- wide nailing flanges full depth of joist. Nailing flanges provide lateral support at joist top chord.
1. Thickness: **[0.050 inch] [0.062 inch]**.
- H. Top Flange Hangers: U-shaped joist hangers, full depth of joist, formed from metal strap with tabs bent to extend over and be fastened to supporting member.
1. Strap Width: **[1-1/2 inches] [2 inches]**.
 2. Thickness: **[0.050 inch] [0.062 inch]**.
- I. Bridging: Rigid, V-section, nailless type, 0.050 inch thick, length to suit joist size and spacing.
- J. Post Bases: Adjustable-socket type for bolting in place with standoff plate to raise post 1 inch above base and with 2-inch- minimum side cover, socket 0.062 inch thick, and standoff and adjustment plates 0.108 inch thick.
- K. Joist Ties: Flat straps, with holes for fasteners, for tying joists together over supports.
1. Width: **[3/4 inch] [1-1/4 inches]**.
 2. Thickness: **[0.050 inch] [0.062 inch]**.
 3. Length: **[16 inches] [24 inches] [As indicated]**.
- L. Rafter Tie-Downs: Bent strap tie for fastening rafters or roof trusses to wall studs below, 1-1/2 inches wide by 0.050 inch thick. **[Tie fastens to side of rafter or truss, face of top plates, and side of stud below.]**
- M. Rafter Tie-Downs (Hurricane or Seismic Ties): Bent strap tie for fastening rafters or roof trusses to wall studs below, 2-1/4 inches wide by 0.062 inch thick. Tie fits over top of rafter or truss and fastens to both sides of rafter or truss, face of top plates, and side of stud below.
- N. Floor-to-Floor Ties: Flat straps, with holes for fasteners, for tying upper floor wall studs to band joists and lower floor studs, 1-1/4 inches wide by 0.050 inch thick by 36 inches long.
- O. Hold-Downs: Brackets for bolting to wall studs and securing to foundation walls with anchor bolts or to other hold-downs with threaded rods and designed with first of two bolts placed seven bolt diameters from reinforced base.

1. Bolt Diameter: **[5/8 inch] [3/4 inch]**.
2. Width: **[2-1/2 inches] [3-3/16 inches]**.
3. Body Thickness: **[0.108 inch] [0.138 inch]**.
4. Base Reinforcement Thickness: **[0.108 inch] [0.239 inch]**.

P. Wall Bracing:

1. T-shaped bracing made for letting into studs in saw kerf, 1-1/8 inches wide by 9/16 inch deep by 0.034 inch thick with hemmed edges.
2. Angle bracing made for letting into studs in saw kerf, 15/16 by 15/16 by 0.040 inch thick with hemmed edges.

2.12 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

A. Sill-Sealer Gaskets:

1. Glass-fiber-resilient insulation, fabricated in strip form, for use as a sill sealer; 1-inch nominal thickness, compressible to 1/32 inch; selected from manufacturer's standard widths to suit width of sill members indicated.
2. Closed-cell neoprene foam, 1/4 inch thick, selected from manufacturer's standard widths to suit width of sill members indicated.
3. Self-adhering sheet consisting of 64mils of rubberized asphalt laminated on one side to a 4-mil- thick, polyethylene-film reinforcement, and with release liner on adhesive side **[/b> formulated for application with primer or surface conditioner that complies with VOC limits of authorities having jurisdiction].**

B. Flexible Flashing: Composite, self-adhesive, flashing product consisting of a pliable, **[butyl rubber] [or] [rubberized-asphalt]** compound, bonded to a high-density polyethylene film, aluminum foil, or spunbonded polyolefin to produce an overall thickness of not less than 0.025 inch.

C. Adhesives for Gluing **[Furring] [and] [Sleepers]** to Concrete or Masonry: Formulation complying with ASTM D3498 that is approved for use indicated by adhesive manufacturer.

1. <Click to insert sustainable design text for VOC content of adhesive.>
2. <Click to insert sustainable design text for low emitting adhesives.>

D. Water-Repellent Preservative: NWWDA-tested and -accepted formulation containing 3-iodo-2-propynyl butyl carbamate, combined with an insecticide containing chloropyrifos as its active ingredient.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Framing Standard: Comply with AF&PA's WCD 1, "Details for Conventional Wood Frame Construction," unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Framing with Engineered Wood Products: Install engineered wood products to comply with manufacturer's written instructions.

- C. Set work to required levels and lines, with members plumb, true to line, cut, and fitted. Fit rough carpentry accurately to other construction. Locate **furring**, [nailers, blocking, **grounds**,]and similar supports to comply with requirements for attaching other construction.
- D. Install plywood backing panels by fastening to studs; coordinate locations with utilities requiring backing panels. [**Install fire-retardant-treated plywood backing panels with classification marking of testing agency exposed to view.**]
- E. Install shear wall panels to comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
- F. Install metal framing anchors to comply with manufacturer's written instructions. Install fasteners through each fastener hole.
- G. Install sill sealer gasket to form continuous seal between sill plates and foundation walls.
- H. Install sill sealer gasket/termite barrier in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions at the underside of wall bottom track or rim track and at the top of foundation wall or slab at stud or joist locations.
- I. Do not splice structural members between supports unless otherwise indicated.
- J. Provide blocking and framing as indicated and as required to support facing materials, fixtures, specialty items, and trim.
 - 1. Provide metal clips for fastening gypsum board or lath at corners and intersections where framing or blocking does not provide a surface for fastening edges of panels. Space clips not more than 16 inches o.c.
- K. Provide fire blocking in furred spaces, stud spaces, and other concealed cavities as indicated and as follows:
 - 1. Fire block furred spaces of walls, at each floor level, at ceiling, and at not more than 96 inches o.c. with solid wood blocking or noncombustible materials accurately fitted to close furred spaces.
 - 2. Fire block concealed spaces of wood-framed walls and partitions at each floor level, at ceiling line of top story, and at not more than 96 inches o.c. Where fire blocking is not inherent in framing system used, provide closely fitted solid wood blocks of same width as framing members and 2-inch nominal thickness.
 - 3. Fire block concealed spaces between floor sleepers with same material as sleepers to limit concealed spaces to not more than 100 sq. ft. and to solidly fill space below partitions.
 - 4. Fire block concealed spaces behind combustible cornices and exterior trim at not more than 20 feet o.c.
- L. Sort and select lumber so that natural characteristics do not interfere with installation or with fastening other materials to lumber. Do not use materials with defects that interfere with function of member or pieces that are too small to use with minimum number of joints or optimum joint arrangement.
- M. Comply with AWPA M4 for applying field treatment to cut surfaces of preservative-treated lumber.
 - 1. Use inorganic boron for items that are continuously protected from liquid water.

2. Use copper naphthenate for items not continuously protected from liquid water.
- N. Where wood-preservative-treated lumber is installed adjacent to metal decking, install continuous flexible flashing separator between wood and metal decking.
- O. Securely attach rough carpentry work to substrate by anchoring and fastening as indicated, complying with the following:
 1. Table 2304.9.1, "Fastening Schedule," in ICC's International Building Code (IBC).
 2. Table R602.3(1), "Fastener Schedule for Structural Members," and Table R602.3(2), "Alternate Attachments," in ICC's International Residential Code for One- and Two-Family Dwellings.
 3. ICC-ES evaluation report for fastener.
- P. Use steel common nails unless otherwise indicated. Select fasteners of size that will not fully penetrate members where opposite side will be exposed to view or will receive finish materials. Make tight connections between members. Install fasteners without splitting wood. Drive nails snug but do not countersink nail heads unless otherwise indicated.
- Q. For exposed work, arrange fasteners in straight rows parallel with edges of members, with fasteners evenly spaced, and with adjacent rows staggered.
 1. Comply with **[approved] [indicated]** fastener patterns where applicable. **[Before fastening, mark fastener locations, using a template made of sheet metal, plastic, or cardboard.]**
 2. Use finishing nails unless otherwise indicated. Countersink nail heads and fill holes with wood filler.
 3. Use common nails unless otherwise indicated. Drive nails snug but do not countersink nail heads.

3.2 INSTALLATION OF WOOD BLOCKING AND NAILERS

- A. Install where indicated and where required for **[screeding or]** attaching other work. Form to shapes indicated and cut as required for true line and level of attached work. Coordinate locations with other work involved.
- B. Attach items to substrates to support applied loading. Recess bolts and nuts flush with surfaces unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Provide permanent grounds of dressed, pressure-preservative-treated, key-beveled lumber not less than 1-1/2 inches wide and of thickness required to bring face of ground to exact thickness of finish material. Remove temporary grounds when no longer required.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF WOOD FURRING

- A. Install level and plumb with closure strips at edges and openings. Shim with wood as required for tolerance of finish work.
- B. Furring to Receive Plywood or Hardboard Paneling: Install 1-by-3-inch nominal- size furring **[horizontally] [and] [vertically]** at **[24 inches] [600 mm]** o.c.

- C. Furring to Receive **[Gypsum Board] [Plaster Lath]**: Install 1-by-2-inch nominal- size furring vertically at **[16 inches] [400 mm]** o.c.

3.4 INSTALLATION OF WALL AND PARTITION FRAMING

- A. General: Provide single bottom plate and double top plates using members of 2-inch nominal thickness whose widths equal that of studs, except single top plate may be used for non-load-bearing partitions **[and for load-bearing partitions where framing members bearing on partition are located directly over studs]**. Fasten plates to supporting construction unless otherwise indicated.
1. For exterior walls, provide **[2-by-6-inch nominal-] [2-by-4-inch nominal-]** size wood studs spaced **[24 inches] [16 inches] [600 mm] [400 mm]** o.c. unless otherwise indicated.
 2. For interior partitions and walls, provide **[2-by-6-inch nominal-] [2-by-4-inch nominal-] [2-by-3-inch nominal-]** size wood studs spaced **[24 inches] [16 inches] [600 mm] [400 mm]** o.c. unless otherwise indicated.
 3. Provide continuous horizontal blocking at midheight of partitions more than 96 inches high, using members of 2-inch nominal thickness and of same width as wall or partitions.
- B. Construct corners and intersections with three or more studs [, **except that two studs may be used for interior non-load-bearing partitions**].
- C. Frame openings with multiple studs and headers. Provide nailed header members of thickness equal to width of studs. Support headers on jamb studs.
1. For non-load-bearing partitions, provide double-jamb studs and headers not less than 4-inch nominal depth for openings 48 inches and less in width, 6-inch nominal depth for openings 48 to 72 inches in width, 8-inch nominal depth for openings 72 to 120 inches in width, and not less than 10-inch nominal depth for openings 10 to 12 feet in width.
 2. For load-bearing walls, provide double-jamb studs for openings 60 inches and less in width, and triple-jamb studs for wider openings. Provide headers of depth indicated **[or, if not indicated, according to Table R502.5(1) or Table R502.5(2), as applicable, in ICC's International Residential Code for One- and Two-Family Dwellings]**.
- D. Provide diagonal bracing in **[exterior walls, at both walls of each external corner] [walls, at locations indicated]**, at 45-degree angle, full-story height unless otherwise indicated. Use **[1-by-4-inch nominal- size boards, let-in flush with faces of studs] [metal wall bracing, let into studs in saw kerf]**.

3.5 INSTALLATION OF FLOOR JOIST FRAMING

- A. General: Install floor joists with crown edge up and support ends of each member with not less than 1-1/2 inches of bearing on wood or metal, or 3 inches on masonry. Attach floor joists as follows:
1. Where supported on wood members, by **[toe nailing or by]** using metal framing anchors.
 2. Where framed into wood supporting members, by using wood ledgers as indicated or, if not indicated, by using metal joist hangers.

- B. Fire Cuts: At joists built into masonry, bevel cut ends 3 inches and do not embed more than 4 inches.
- C. Frame openings with headers and trimmers supported by metal joist hangers; double headers and trimmers where span of header exceeds 48 inches.
- D. Do not notch in middle third of joists; limit notches to one-sixth depth of joist, one-third at ends. Do not bore holes larger than one-third depth of joist; do not locate closer than 2 inches from top or bottom.
- E. Provide solid blocking of 2-inch nominal thickness by depth of joist at ends of joists unless nailed to header or band.
- F. Lap members framing from opposite sides of beams, girders, or partitions not less than 4 inches or securely tie opposing members together. Provide solid blocking of 2-inch nominal thickness by depth of joist over supports.
- G. Anchor members paralleling masonry with 1/4-by-1-1/4-inch metal strap anchors spaced not more than 96 inches o.c., extending over and fastening to three joists. Embed anchors at least 4 inches into grouted masonry with ends bent at right angles and extending 4 inches beyond bend.
- H. Provide solid blocking between joists under jamb studs for openings.
- I. Under non-load-bearing partitions, provide double joists separated by solid blocking equal to depth of studs above.
 - 1. Provide triple joists separated as above, under partitions receiving ceramic tile and similar heavy finishes or fixtures.
- J. Provide bridging of type indicated below, at intervals of 96 inches o.c., between joists.
 - 1. Diagonal wood bridging formed from bevel-cut, 1-by-3-inch nominal- size lumber, double-crossed and nailed at both ends to joists.
 - 2. Steel bridging installed to comply with bridging manufacturer's written instructions.

3.6 INSTALLATION OF CEILING JOIST AND RAFTER FRAMING

- A. Ceiling Joists: Install with crown edge up and complying with requirements specified above for floor joists. Face nail to ends of parallel rafters.
 - 1. Where ceiling joists are at right angles to rafters, provide additional short joists parallel to rafters from wall plate to first joist; nail to ends of rafters and to top plate, and nail to first joist or anchor with framing anchors or metal straps. Provide 1-by-8-inch nominal- size or 2-by-4-inch nominal- size stringers spaced 48 inches o.c. crosswise over main ceiling joists.
- B. Rafters: Notch to fit exterior wall plates and [**toe nail or**] use metal framing anchors. Double rafters to form headers and trimmers at openings in roof framing, if any, and support with metal hangers. Where rafters abut at ridge, place directly opposite each other and nail to ridge member or use metal ridge hangers.

1. At valleys, provide double-valley rafters of size indicated or, if not indicated, of same thickness as regular rafters and 2 inches deeper. Bevel ends of jack rafters for full bearing against valley rafters.
 2. At hips, provide hip rafter of size indicated or, if not indicated, of same thickness as regular rafters and 2 inches deeper. Bevel ends of jack rafters for full bearing against hip rafter.
- C. Provide collar beams (ties) as indicated or, if not indicated, provide 1-by-6-inch nominal- size boards between every third pair of rafters, but not more than 48 inches o.c. Locate below ridge member, at third point of rafter span. Cut ends to fit roof slope and nail to rafters.
- D. Provide special framing as indicated for eaves, overhangs, dormers, and similar conditions if any.

3.7 INSTALLATION OF TIMBER FRAMING

- A. Install timber beams with crown edge up and provide not less than 4 inches of bearing on supports. Provide continuous members unless otherwise indicated; tie together over supports as indicated if not continuous.
- B. Where beams or girders are framed into pockets of exterior concrete or masonry walls, provide 1/2-inch airspace at sides and ends of wood members.
- C. Install wood posts using metal anchors indicated.
- D. Treat ends of timber beams and posts exposed to weather by dipping in water-repellent preservative for 15 minutes.

3.8 PROTECTION

- A. Protect wood that has been treated with inorganic boron (SBX) from weather. If, despite protection, inorganic boron-treated wood becomes wet, apply EPA-registered borate treatment. Apply borate solution by spraying to comply with EPA-registered label.
- B. Protect rough carpentry from weather. If, despite protection, rough carpentry becomes **[wet]** **[wet enough that moisture content exceeds that specified]**, apply EPA-registered borate treatment. Apply borate solution by spraying to comply with EPA-registered label.

END OF SECTION 061000

SECTION 061600 - SHEATHING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Roof sheathing.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 061000 "Rough Carpentry" for plywood backing panels.
2. Section 072500 "Weather Barriers" for water-resistive barrier applied over wall sheathing.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of process and factory-fabricated product. Indicate component materials and dimensions and include construction and application details.

1. Include data for wood-preserved treatment from chemical treatment manufacturer and certification by treating plant that treated plywood complies with requirements. Indicate type of preservative used and net amount of preservative retained.
2. Include data for fire-retardant treatment from chemical treatment manufacturer and certification by treating plant that treated plywood complies with requirements. Include physical properties of treated materials.
3. For fire-retardant treatments, include physical properties of treated plywood both before and after exposure to elevated temperatures, based on testing by a qualified independent testing agency in accordance with ASTM D5516.
4. For products receiving waterborne treatment, include statement that moisture content of treated materials was reduced to levels specified before shipment to Project site.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Field quality-control reports.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Testing Agency Qualifications:

1. For testing agency providing classification marking for fire-retardant-treated material, an inspection agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction that periodically performs inspections to verify that the material bearing the classification marking is representative of the material tested.
2. For testing and inspecting agency providing tests and inspections related to air-barrier and water-resistant glass-mat gypsum sheathing: an independent agency, qualified in

accordance with ASTM E329 for testing indicated, and certified by Air Barrier Association of America, Inc.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Stack panels flat with spacers beneath and between each bundle to provide air circulation. Protect sheathing from weather by covering with waterproof sheeting, securely anchored. Provide for air circulation around stacks and under coverings.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Fire-Resistance Ratings: As tested in accordance with ASTM E119; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
 - 1. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Indicated by design designations from UL's "Fire Resistance Directory" or from the listings of another qualified testing agency.

2.2 WOOD PANEL PRODUCTS

- A. Emissions: Products are to meet the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."
- B. Thickness: As needed to comply with requirements specified, but not less than thickness indicated.
- C. Factory mark panels to indicate compliance with applicable standard.

2.3 FIRE-RETARDANT-TREATED PLYWOOD

- A. General: Where fire-retardant-treated materials are indicated, use materials complying with requirements in this article that are acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction and with fire-test-response characteristics specified as determined by testing identical products per test method indicated by a qualified testing agency.
- B. Fire-Retardant-Treated Plywood by Pressure Process: Products with a flame-spread index of 25 or less when tested in accordance with ASTM E84, and with no evidence of significant progressive combustion when the test is extended an additional 20 minutes, and with the flame front not extending more than 10.5 feet beyond the centerline of the burners at any time during the test.
 - 1. Use treatment that does not promote corrosion of metal fasteners.
 - 2. Exterior Type: Treated materials are to comply with requirements specified above for fire-retardant-treated plywood by pressure process after being subjected to accelerated weathering in accordance with ASTM D2898. Use for exterior locations and where indicated.

3. Interior Type A: Treated materials are to have a moisture content of 28 percent or less when tested in accordance with ASTM D3201/D3201M at 92 percent relative humidity. Use where exterior type is not indicated.
 4. Design Value Adjustment Factors: Treated lumber plywood is to be tested in accordance with ASTM D5516 and design value adjustment factors are to be calculated in accordance with ASTM D6305. Span ratings after treatment are to be not less than span ratings specified. For roof sheathing and where high-temperature fire-retardant treatment is indicated, span ratings for temperatures up to 170 deg F are to be not less than span ratings specified.
- C. Kiln-dry material after treatment to a maximum moisture content of 15 percent. Do not use material that is warped or does not comply with requirements for untreated material.
- D. Identify fire-retardant-treated plywood with appropriate classification marking of qualified testing agency.
- E. Application: Treat all plywood unless otherwise indicated. Treat plywood indicated on Drawings, and the following:
1. Roof sheathing within 48 inches of fire walls.
 2. Roof sheathing.
 3. **<Insert category of plywood items required to be treated>.**

2.4 ROOF SHEATHING

- A. Plywood Sheathing: DOC PS 1 Either DOC PS 1 or DOC PS 2 , Exterior, Structural I Exterior Exposure 1, Structural I Exposure 1 sheathing.
1. Span Rating: Not less than 16/0 20/0 24/0 32/16 40/20 48/24.
 2. Nominal Thickness: Not less than 15/32 inch 1/2 inch.

2.5 FASTENERS

- A. General: Provide fasteners of size and type indicated that comply with requirements specified in this article for material and manufacture.
1. For roof and sheathing, provide fasteners with hot-dip zinc coating complying with ASTM A153/A153M .
 2. For roof and sheathing, provide fasteners with organic-polymer or other corrosion-protective coating having a salt-spray resistance of more than 800 hours in accordance with ASTM B117.
- B. Nails, Brads, and Staples: ASTM F1667.
- C. Screws for Fastening Sheathing to Wood Framing: ASTM C1002.

2.6 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Adhesives for Field Gluing Panels to Wood Framing: Formulation complying with APA AFG-01 ASTM D3498 that is approved for use with type of construction panel indicated by manufacturers of both adhesives and panels.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Do not use materials with defects that impair quality of sheathing or pieces that are too small to use with minimum number of joints or optimum joint arrangement. Arrange joints so that pieces do not span between fewer than three support members.
- B. Cut panels at penetrations, edges, and other obstructions of work; fit tightly against abutting construction unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Securely attach to substrate by fastening as indicated, complying with the following:
 - 1. Table 2304.10.1, "Fastening Schedule," in the ICC's International Building Code.
 - 2. Table R602.3(1), "Fastener Schedule for Structural Members," and Table R602.3(2), "Alternate Attachments," in the ICC's International Residential Code for One- and Two-Family Dwellings.
 - 3. ICC-ES evaluation report for fastener.
- D. Use common wire nails unless otherwise indicated. Select fasteners of size that will not fully penetrate members where opposite side will be exposed to view or will receive finish materials. Make tight connections. Install fasteners without splitting wood.
- E. Coordinate and roof sheathing installation with flashing and joint-sealant installation so these materials are installed in sequence and manner that prevent exterior moisture from passing through completed assembly.
- F. Do not bridge building expansion joints; cut and space edges of panels to match spacing of structural support elements.
- G. Coordinate sheathing installation with installation of materials installed over sheathing so sheathing is not exposed to precipitation or left exposed at end of the workday when rain is forecast.

3.2 INSTALLATION OF WOOD STRUCTURAL PANEL

- A. General: Comply with applicable recommendations in APA Form No. E30, "Engineered Wood Construction Guide," for types of structural-use panels and applications indicated.
- B. Fastening Methods: Fasten panels as indicated below:
 - 1. Wall and Roof Sheathing:
 - a. Nail or staple to wood framing. Apply a continuous bead of glue to framing members at edges of wall sheathing panels.

- b. Screw to cold-formed metal framing.
- c. Space panels 1/8 inch apart at edges and ends.
2. Underlayment:
 - a. Nail Nail or staple to subflooring.
 - b. Space panels 1/32 inch apart at edges and ends.
 - c. Fill and sand edge joints of underlayment receiving resilient flooring immediately before installing flooring.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing and Inspecting Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Tests: As determined by testing agency from among the following tests:
 1. Air-Leakage-Location Testing: Air-barrier sheathing assemblies will be tested for evidence of air leakage in accordance with ASTM E1186, chamber pressurization or depressurization with smoke tracers ASTM E1186, chamber depressurization using detection liquids **<Insert requirement>**.
 2. Air-Leakage-Volume Testing: Air-barrier assemblies will be tested for air-leakage rate in accordance with ASTM E783 or ASTM E2357.
- C. Air barriers will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- D. Repair damage to air barriers caused by testing; follow manufacturer's written instructions.
- E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

END OF SECTION 061600

SECTION 061753 - SHOP-FABRICATED WOOD TRUSSES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Wood products.
2. Preservative-treated lumber.
3. Fire-retardant-treated lumber.

1.2 ALLOWANCES

- A. Provide wood truss bracing under the Metal-Plate-Connected Truss Bracing Allowance as specified in Section 012100 "Allowances."

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Metal-Plate-Connected Wood Trusses: Planar structural units consisting of metal-plate-connected members fabricated from dimension lumber and cut and assembled before delivery to Project site.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For **[wood-preservative-treated lumber,]** **[fire-retardant-treated lumber,]** metal-plate connectors, metal truss accessories, and fasteners.

1. Include data for wood-preservative treatment from chemical treatment manufacturer and certification from treating plant that treated materials comply with requirements. Indicate type of preservative used and net amount of preservative retained.
2. Include data for fire-retardant treatment from chemical-treatment manufacturer and certification from treating plant that treated materials comply with requirements. Include physical properties of treated materials based on testing by a qualified independent testing agency.
3. For fire-retardant treatments, include physical properties of treated lumber both before and after exposure to elevated temperatures, based on testing by a qualified independent testing agency in accordance with ASTM D5664.
4. For products receiving a waterborne treatment, include statement that moisture content of treated materials was reduced to levels specified before shipment to truss fabricator.

B. Sustainable Design Submittals:

1. [<Click to insert sustainable design text for regional materials.>](#)
2. [<Click to insert sustainable design text for certified wood.>](#)
3. [<Click to insert sustainable design text for certified wood.>](#)

- C. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details for trusses.
 - 1. Show location, pitch, span, camber, configuration, and spacing for each type of truss required.
 - 2. Indicate sizes, stress grades, and species of lumber.
 - 3. Indicate locations of permanent bracing required to prevent buckling of individual truss members due to design loads.
 - 4. Indicate locations, sizes, and materials for permanent bracing required to prevent buckling of individual truss members due to design loads.
 - 5. Indicate type, size, material, finish, design values, orientation, and location of metal connector plates.
 - 6. Show splice details and bearing details.
- D. Delegated Design Submittals: For metal-plate-connected wood trusses indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For **[metal connector-plate manufacturer] [professional engineer] [and] [fabricator]**.
- B. Material Certificates: For dimension lumber specified to comply with minimum specific gravity. Indicate species and grade selected for each use and specific gravity.
- C. Product Certificates: For metal-plate-connected wood trusses, signed by officer of truss-fabricating firm.
- D. Evaluation Reports: For the following, from ICC-ES:
 - 1. Wood-preserved-treated lumber.
 - 2. Fire-retardant-treated wood.
 - 3. Metal-plate connectors.
 - 4. Metal truss accessories.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Metal Connector-Plate Manufacturer Qualifications: A manufacturer that is a member of TPI and that complies with quality-control procedures in TPI 1 for manufacture of connector plates.
 - 1. Manufacturer's responsibilities include providing professional engineering services needed to assume engineering responsibility.
 - 2. Engineering Responsibility: Preparation of Shop Drawings and comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer.
- B. Fabricator Qualifications: Shop that **[participates in a recognized quality-assurance program, complies with quality-control procedures in TPI 1, and involves third-party inspection by an independent testing and inspecting agency acceptable to Architect and authorities having jurisdiction] [and] [is certified for chain of custody by an FSC-accredited certification body]**.

- C. Testing Agency Qualifications: For testing agency providing classification marking for fire-retardant-treated material, an inspection agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction that periodically performs inspections to verify that the material bearing the classification marking is representative of the material tested.
- D. <Click to insert sustainable design text for manufacturer qualifications.>
- E. <Click to insert sustainable design text for vendor qualifications.>

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Handle and store trusses to comply with recommendations in SBCA BCSI, "Building Component Safety Information: Guide to Good Practice for Handling, Installing, Restraining, & Bracing Metal Plate Connected Wood Trusses."
 - 1. Store trusses flat, off of ground, and adequately supported to prevent lateral bending.
 - 2. Protect trusses from weather by covering with waterproof sheeting, securely anchored.
 - 3. Provide for air circulation around stacks and under coverings.
- B. Inspect trusses showing discoloration, corrosion, or other evidence of deterioration. Discard and replace trusses that are damaged or defective.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design metal-plate-connected wood trusses.
- B. Structural Performance: Metal-plate-connected wood trusses are to be capable of withstanding design loads within limits and under conditions indicated. Comply with requirements in TPI 1 unless more stringent requirements are specified below.
 - 1. Design Loads: As indicated.
 - 2. Maximum Deflection under Design Loads:
 - a. Roof Trusses: Vertical deflection of [1/180] [1/240] [1/360] of span.
 - b. Floor Trusses: Vertical deflection of [1/360] [1/480] [1/600] of span.
- C. Comply with applicable requirements and recommendations of TPI 1, TPI DSB, and SBCA BCSI.
- D. Wood Structural Design Standard: Comply with applicable requirements in AF&PA's "National Design Specifications for Wood Construction" and its "Supplement."
- E. <Click to insert sustainable design text for regional wood materials.>
- F. <Click to insert sustainable design text for certified wood.>

2.2 WOOD PRODUCTS

- A. Lumber: DOC PS 20 and applicable rules of any rules-writing agency certified by the American Lumber Standard Committee (ALSC) Board of Review. Provide lumber graded by an agency certified by the ALSC Board of Review to inspect and grade lumber under the rules indicated.
1. Factory mark each piece of lumber with grade stamp of grading agency.
 2. For exposed lumber indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, omit grade stamp and provide certificates of grade compliance issued by grading agency.
 3. Provide dressed lumber, S4S.
 4. Provide dry lumber with **[15] [19]** percent maximum moisture content at time of dressing.
- B. Minimum Chord Size for Roof Trusses: **[2 by 6 inches nominal for top chords] [2 by 6 inches nominal for bottom chords] [2 by 6 inches nominal for both top and bottom chords]**.
- C. Minimum Specific Gravity for Top Chords: **[0.50] <Insert value>**.
- D. Permanent Bracing: Provide wood bracing that complies with requirements for miscellaneous lumber in Section 061000 "Rough Carpentry."

2.3 PRESERVATIVE-TREATED LUMBER

- A. Preservative Treatment by Pressure Process: AWWPA U1; Use Category UC2 **[for interior construction not in contact with the ground, Use Category UC3b for exterior construction not in contact with the ground, and Use Category UC4a for items in contact with the ground]**.
1. Preservative Chemicals: Acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction and containing no arsenic or chromium.
 2. For exposed trusses indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, use chemical formulations that do not require incising, contain colorants, bleed through, or otherwise adversely affect finishes.
- B. Kiln-dry lumber after treatment to a maximum moisture content of 19 percent. Do not use material that is warped or does not comply with requirements for untreated material.
- C. Mark lumber with treatment quality mark of an inspection agency approved by the ALSC Board of Review.
1. For exposed trusses indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, **[mark end or back of each piece] [or] [omit marking and provide certificates of treatment compliance issued by inspection agency]**.
- D. Application: Treat **[all trusses unless otherwise indicated] [trusses where indicated on Drawings]**.

2.4 FIRE-RETARDANT-TREATED LUMBER

- A. General: Where fire-retardant-treated materials are indicated, use materials complying with requirements in this article, that are acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and with fire-

test-response characteristics specified as determined by testing identical products according to test method indicated by a qualified testing agency.

- B. Fire-Retardant-Treated Lumber by Pressure Process: Products with a flame-spread index of 25 or less when tested in accordance with ASTM E84, with no evidence of significant progressive combustion when the test is extended an additional 20 minutes, and with the flame front not extending more than 10.5 feet beyond the centerline of the burners at any time during the test.
1. Use treatment that does not promote corrosion of metal fasteners.
 2. Exterior Type: Treated materials are to comply with requirements specified above for fire-retardant-treated lumber and plywood by pressure process after being subjected to accelerated weathering in accordance with ASTM D2898. Use for exterior locations and where indicated.
 3. Interior Type A: Treated materials are to have a moisture content of 28 percent or less when tested in accordance with ASTM D3201 at 92 percent relative humidity. Use for interior locations where exterior type is not indicated.
 4. Design Value Adjustment Factors: Treated lumber is to be tested in accordance with ASTM D5664, and design value adjustment factors is to be calculated in accordance with ASTM D6841. **[For enclosed roof framing and framing in attic spaces, and where high-temperature fire-retardant treatment is indicated, provide material with adjustment factors of not less than 0.85 modulus of elasticity and 0.75 for extreme fiber in bending for Project's climatological zone.]**
- C. Kiln-dry lumber after treatment to a maximum moisture content of **[15] [19]** percent.
- D. Identify fire-retardant-treated wood with appropriate classification marking of testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
1. For exposed trusses and bracing indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, **[mark end or back of each piece] [or] [omit marking and provide certificates of treatment compliance issued by inspection agency].**
- E. For exposed trusses indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, use chemical formulations that do not bleed through, contain colorants, or otherwise adversely affect finishes.
- F. Application: Treat **[all trusses unless otherwise indicated.] [items indicated on Drawings, and the following:]**
1. Floor trusses.
 2. Roof trusses.
 3. **<Insert category of trusses required to be treated>.**

2.5 METAL CONNECTOR PLATES

- A. <Click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>
- B. Fabricate connector plates to comply with TPI 1.
- C. Hot-Dip Galvanized-Steel Sheet: ASTM A653/A653M; Structural Steel (SS), high-strength low-alloy steel Type A (HSLAS Type A), or high-strength low-alloy steel Type B (HSLAS Type B); G60 coating designation; and not less than 0.036 inch thick.

1. Use for interior locations unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Hot-Dip Heavy-Galvanized-Steel Sheet: ASTM A653/A653M; Structural Steel (SS), high-strength low-alloy steel Type A (HSLAS Type A), or high-strength low-alloy steel Type B (HSLAS Type B); G185 coating designation; and not less than 0.036 inch thick.
 1. Use for wood-preserved-treated lumber and where indicated.
- E. Stainless Steel Sheet: ASTM A240/A240M or ASTM A666, [**Type 304**] [**Type 316**], and not less than 0.035 inch thick.
 1. Use for exterior locations [, **wood-preserved-treated lumber,**] [**fire-retardant treated lumber,**] and where indicated.

2.6 FASTENERS

- A. Provide fasteners of size and type indicated that comply with requirements specified in this article for material and manufacture.
 1. Provide fasteners for use with metal framing anchors that comply with written recommendations of metal framing manufacturer.
 2. Where trusses are exposed to weather, in ground contact, made from pressure-preserved-treated wood, or in area of high relative humidity, provide fasteners [**with hot-dip zinc coating complying with ASTM A153/A153M**] [**of Type 304 stainless steel**].
- B. Nails, Brads, and Staples: ASTM F1667.

2.7 METAL FRAMING ANCHORS AND ACCESSORIES

- A. <Click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>
- B. Allowable design loads, as published by manufacturer, are to comply with or exceed those [**indicated**] [**of basis-of-design products**] [**of products of manufacturers listed**]. Manufacturer's published values are to be determined from empirical data or by rational engineering analysis and demonstrated by comprehensive testing performed by a qualified independent testing agency. Framing anchors are to be punched for fasteners adequate to withstand same loads as framing anchors.
- C. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: Hot-dip, zinc-coated steel sheet complying with ASTM A653/A653M, G60 coating designation.
 1. Use for interior locations unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Hot-Dip Heavy-Galvanized-Steel Sheet: ASTM A653/A653M; Structural Steel (SS), high-strength low-alloy steel Type A (HSLAS Type A), or high-strength low-alloy steel Type B (HSLAS Type B); G185 coating designation; and not less than 0.036 inch thick.
 1. Use for wood-preserved-treated lumber and where indicated.
- E. Stainless Steel Sheet: ASTM A240/A240M or ASTM A666, [**Type 304**] [**Type 316**].

1. Use for exterior locations and where indicated.
- F. Truss Tie-Downs: Bent strap tie for fastening roof trusses to wall studs below, 1-1/2 inches wide by 0.050 inch thick. [**Tie fastens to one side of truss, top plates, and side of stud below.**]
- G. Truss Tie-Downs (Hurricane or Seismic Ties): Bent strap tie for fastening roof trusses to wall studs below, 2-1/4 inches wide by 0.062 inch thick. Tie fits over top of truss and fastens to both sides of truss, top plates, and one side of stud below.
- H. Roof Truss Clips: Angle clips for bracing bottom chord of roof trusses at non-load-bearing walls, 1-1/4 inches wide by 0.050 inch thick. Clip is fastened to truss through slotted holes to allow for truss deflection.
- I. Floor Truss Hangers: U-shaped hangers, full depth of floor truss, with 1-3/4-inch- long seat; formed from metal strap 0.062 inch thick with tabs bent to extend over and be fastened to supporting member.
- J. Roof Truss Bracing/Spacers: U-shaped channels, 1-1/2 inches wide by 1 inch deep by 0.040 inch thick, made to fit between two adjacent trusses and accurately space them apart, and with tabs having metal teeth for fastening to trusses.
- K. Drag Strut Connectors: Angle clip with one leg extended for fastening to the side of girder truss.
 1. Angle clip is 3 by 3 by 0.179 by 8 inches with extended leg 8 inches long. Connector has galvanized finish.
 2. Angle clip is 3 by 3 by 0.239 by 10-1/2 inches with extended leg 10-1/2 inches long. Connector has painted finish.

2.8 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Galvanizing Repair Paint: SSPC-Paint 20, with dry film containing a minimum of 92 percent zinc dust by weight.

2.9 FABRICATION

- A. Cut truss members to accurate lengths, angles, and sizes to produce close-fitting joints.
- B. Fabricate metal connector plates to sizes, configurations, thicknesses, and anchorage details required to withstand design loads for types of joint designs indicated.
- C. Assemble truss members in design configuration indicated; use jigs or other means to ensure uniformity and accuracy of assembly, with joints closely fitted to comply with tolerances in TPI 1. Position members to produce design camber indicated.
 1. Fabricate wood trusses within manufacturing tolerances in TPI 1.
- D. Connect truss members by metal connector plates located and securely embedded simultaneously in both sides of wood members by air or hydraulic press.

2.10 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Special Inspections: Owner will engage a qualified special inspector to perform special inspections.
 - 1. Provide special inspector with access to fabricator's documentation of detailed fabrication and quality-control procedures that provide a basis for inspection control of the workmanship and the fabricator's ability to conform to approved construction documents and referenced standards.
 - 2. Provide special inspector with access to places where wood trusses are being fabricated to perform inspections.
- B. Correct deficiencies in Work that special inspections indicate do not comply with the Contract Documents.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install wood trusses only after supporting construction is in place and is braced and secured.
- B. If trusses are delivered to Project site in more than one piece, assemble trusses before installing.
- C. Hoist trusses in place by lifting equipment suited to sizes and types of trusses required, exercising care not to damage truss members or joints by out-of-plane bending or other causes.
- D. Install and brace trusses according to TPI recommendations and as indicated.
- E. Install trusses plumb, square, and true to line and securely fasten to supporting construction.
- F. Space trusses [**16 inches o.c.**] [**24 inches o.c.**] [**as indicated**]; adjust and align trusses in location before permanently fastening.
- G. Anchor trusses securely at bearing points; use metal truss tie-downs or floor truss hangers as applicable. Install fasteners through each fastener hole in metal framing anchors according to manufacturer's fastening schedules and written instructions.
- H. Securely connect each truss ply required for forming built-up girder trusses.
 - 1. Anchor trusses to girder trusses as indicated.
- I. Install and fasten permanent bracing during truss erection and before construction loads are applied. Anchor ends of permanent bracing where terminating at walls or beams.
 - 1. Install bracing to comply with Section 061000 "Rough Carpentry."
 - 2. Install and fasten strongback bracing vertically against vertical web of parallel-chord floor trusses at centers indicated.
- J. Install wood trusses within installation tolerances in TPI 1.

- K. Do not alter trusses in field. Do not cut, drill, notch, or remove truss members.
- L. Replace wood trusses that are damaged or do not comply with requirements.
 - 1. Damaged trusses may be repaired according to truss repair details signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for truss design, when approved by Architect.

3.2 REPAIRS AND PROTECTION

- A. Protect wood that has been treated with inorganic boron (SBX) from weather. If, despite protection, inorganic boron-treated wood becomes wet, apply EPA-registered borate treatment. Apply borate solution by spraying to comply with EPA-registered label.
- B. Protect wood trusses from weather. If, despite protection, wood trusses become wet, apply EPA-registered borate treatment. Apply borate solution by spraying to comply with EPA-registered label.
- C. Repair damaged galvanized coatings on exposed surfaces in accordance with ASTM A780/A780M and manufacturer's written instructions.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Special Inspections: Owner will engage a qualified special inspector to perform special inspections to verify that temporary installation restraint/bracing and the permanent individual truss member restraint/bracing are installed in accordance with the approved truss submittal package.

END OF SECTION 061753

SECTION 064013 - EXTERIOR ARCHITECTURAL WOODWORK

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Exterior standing and running trim for opaque finish.
2. Preservative-treated-wood material.
3. Miscellaneous materials.
4. Shop priming.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 061000 "Rough Carpentry" for wood furring, blocking, shims, and hanging strips required for installing exterior architectural woodwork that are concealed within other construction before exterior architectural woodwork installation.

1.2 COORDINATION

- ##### A. Coordinate sizes and locations of framing, blocking, furring, reinforcements, and other related units of Work specified in other Sections, to ensure that exterior architectural woodwork can be supported and installed as indicated.

1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- ##### A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site .

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- ##### A. Product Data: For each type of product.

B. Wood-Preservative Treatment:

1. Include data and warranty information from chemical-treatment manufacturer and certification by treating plant that treated materials comply with requirements.
2. Indicate type of preservative used and net amount of preservative retained.
3. Include chemical-treatment manufacturer's written instructions for finishing treated material and manufacturer's written warranty.

- ##### C. Waterborne Treatments: For products receiving a waterborne treatment, include statement that moisture content of treated materials was reduced to levels specified before shipment to Project site.

- ##### D. Shop Drawings:

1. Include dimensioned plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.
2. Show large-scale details.
3. Show locations and sizes of furring, blocking, and hanging strips, including blocking and reinforcement concealed by construction and specified in other Sections.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Comply with Architectural Woodwork Standards, Section 2.
- B. Store woodwork in installation areas or in areas where environmental conditions comply with requirements specified in "Field Conditions" Article.

1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Weather Limitations: Proceed with installation of exterior architectural woodwork only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit work to be performed and at least one coat of specified finish to be applied without exposure to rain, snow, or dampness.
- B. Field Measurements: Where exterior architectural woodwork is indicated to fit to other construction, verify dimensions of other construction by field measurements before fabrication, and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings.
 1. Locate concealed framing, blocking, and reinforcements that support woodwork by field measurements before being concealed by construction, and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 ARCHITECTURAL WOODWORK, GENERAL

- A. Quality Standard: Unless otherwise indicated, comply with the Architectural Woodwork Standards for grades of exterior architectural woodwork indicated for construction, finishes, installation, and other requirements.

2.2 EXTERIOR STANDING AND RUNNING TRIM FOR OPAQUE FINISH

- A. Architectural Woodwork Standards Grade: Custom .
- B. Backout or groove backs of flat trim members, and kerf backs of other wide, flat members, except for members with ends exposed in finished work.
- C. Wood Species: Eastern white pine, sugar pine, or western white pine .
 1. Do not use plain-sawn softwood lumber with exposed, flat surfaces more than 3 inches wide.
 2. Wood Moisture Content: 9 to 15 percent.

2.3 PRESERVATIVE-TREATED-WOOD MATERIAL

- A. Preservative-Treated-Wood Materials: Provide with water-repellent preservative treatment complying with AWWA N1 (dip, spray, flood, or vacuum-pressure treatment).
 - 1. Preservative Chemicals: 3-iodo-2-propynyl butyl carbamate (IPBC).
 - 2. Use chemical formulations that do not bleed through or otherwise adversely affect finishes. Do not use colorants in solution to distinguish treated material from untreated material.
- B. Extent of Preservative-Treated Wood Materials: Treat wood materials unless otherwise indicated on Drawings .

2.4 FASTENERS

- A. General: Provide fasteners of size and type indicated, acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and that comply with requirements specified in this article for material and manufacture. Provide nails or screws, in sufficient length, to penetrate not less than 1-1/2 inches into wood substrate.
 - 1. Use fasteners with hot-dip zinc coating complying with ASTM A153/A153M or ASTM F2329/F2329M unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. For pressure-preservative-treated wood, use stainless steel fasteners.
- B. Nails: ASTM F1667.
- C. Wood Screws and Lag Screws: ASME B18.2.1, ASME B18.6.1, or ICC-ES AC233.

2.5 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Blocking, Shims, and Nailers: Softwood or hardwood lumber, kiln-dried to less than 15 percent moisture content.
 - 1. Wood-Preservative Treatment: By pressure process, AWWA U1; Use Category UC3b.
 - a. Kiln-dry lumber after treatment to a maximum moisture content of 19 percent.
 - b. Preservative Chemicals: Acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction and containing no arsenic or chromium.
 - c. Mark lumber with treatment quality mark of an inspection agency approved by the American Lumber Standards Committee's (ALSC) Board of Review.

2.6 FABRICATION

- A. Fabricate exterior architectural woodwork to dimensions, profiles, and details indicated.
 - 1. Ease edges to radius indicated for the following:
 - a. Edges of Solid-Wood (Lumber) Members: 1/16 inch unless otherwise indicated.

2.7 SHOP PRIMING

- A. Preparations for Finishing: Comply with the Architectural Woodwork Standards for sanding, filling countersunk fasteners, sealing concealed surfaces, and similar preparations for finishing exterior architectural woodwork, as applicable to each unit of work.
- B. Exterior Architectural Woodwork for Opaque Finish: Shop prime all surfaces with one coat of wood primer as specified in Section 099113 "Exterior Painting."

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Before installation, condition exterior architectural woodwork to average prevailing humidity conditions at Project site.
- B. Before installing exterior architectural woodwork, examine shop-fabricated work for completion, and complete work as required, including removing packing and backpriming concealed surfaces.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Assemble exterior architectural woodwork, and complete fabrication at Project site to the extent that it was not completed during shop fabrication.
- B. Install exterior architectural woodwork level, plumb, true in line, and without distortion.
 - 1. Shim as required with concealed shims.
 - 2. Install level and plumb to a tolerance of 1/8 inch in 96 inches.
- C. Standing and Running Trim:
 - 1. Install with minimum number of joints possible, using full-length pieces (from maximum length of lumber available) to greatest extent possible.
 - 2. Do not use pieces less than 36 inches long, except where shorter single-length pieces are necessary.
 - 3. Scarf running joints and stagger in adjacent and related members.
- D. Scribe and cut exterior architectural woodwork to fit adjoining work, refinish cut surfaces, and repair damaged finish at cuts.
- E. Preservative-Treated Wood Materials: Where field cut or drilled, treat cut ends and drilled holes according to AWPA M4.
- F. Anchor exterior architectural woodwork to anchors or blocking built in or directly attached to substrates.
 - 1. Secure with countersunk, concealed fasteners and blind nailing.
 - 2. Use fine finishing nails or finishing screws for exposed fastening, countersunk and filled flush with exterior architectural woodwork.

3. For exposed work, arrange fasteners in straight rows parallel with edges of members, with fasteners evenly spaced and with adjacent rows staggered.
 4. For shop-finished items, use filler matching finish of items being installed.
- G. Touch up finishing work specified in this Section after installation of exterior architectural woodwork.
1. Fill nail holes with matching filler where exposed.
 2. Apply specified finish coats, including stains and paste fillers if any, to exposed surfaces where only sealer/prime coats are shop applied.
- H. Field Finishing: See Section 099113 "Exterior Painting" for final finishing of installed exterior architectural woodwork.

3.3 REPAIR

- A. Repair damaged and defective exterior architectural woodwork, where possible, to eliminate functional and visual defects.
- B. Where not possible to repair, replace defective woodwork.

3.4 CLEANING

- A. Clean exterior architectural woodwork on exposed and semiexposed surfaces.

END OF SECTION 064013

SECTION 073113 - ASPHALT SHINGLES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Glass-fiber-reinforced asphalt shingles.
2. Underlayment materials.
3. Metal flashing and trim.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Roofing Terminology: See ASTM D1079 for definitions of terms related to roofing Work in this Section.

1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project Site .

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For the following:

1. Asphalt shingles.
2. Underlayment materials.
3. Asphalt roofing cement.

- B. Shop Drawings: For metal flashing and trim.

C. Samples for Initial Selection:

1. For each type of asphalt shingle indicated.
2. For each type of accessory involving color selection.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer.

- B. Sample Warranty: For manufacturer's materials warranty.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Materials warranties.

1.7 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Asphalt Shingles: 100 sq. ft. of each type and in each color and blend, in unbroken bundles.

1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An authorized installer who is trained and approved by manufacturer.

1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store roofing materials in a dry, well-ventilated location protected from weather, sunlight, and moisture in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Store underlayment rolls on end, on pallets or other raised surfaces. Do not double-stack rolls.
- C. Protect unused roofing materials from weather, sunlight, and moisture when left overnight or when roofing Work is not in progress.
- D. Handle, store, and place roofing materials in a manner to prevent damage to roof deck or structural supporting members.

1.10 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Proceed with installation only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit product installation and related Work to be performed in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions and warranty requirements.
 - 1. Install self-adhering, polymer-modified bitumen sheet underlayment within the range of ambient and substrate temperatures recommended in writing by manufacturer.

1.11 WARRANTY

- A. Materials Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace asphalt shingles that fail within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Manufacturing defects.
 - 2. Materials Warranty Period: 30 years from date of Substantial Completion, prorated, with first years nonprorated.
 - 3. Wind-Speed Warranty Period: Asphalt shingles will resist blow-off or damage caused by wind speeds of up to 115 mph for 15 years from date of Substantial Completion.
 - 4. Algae-Resistance Warranty Period: Asphalt shingles will not discolor for 15 years from date of Substantial Completion.
 - 5. Workmanship Warranty Period: Two years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SOURCE LIMITATIONS

- A. Obtain each type of product from single source from single manufacturer.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Wind Resistance: Provide asphalt shingles that comply with requirements of ASTM D3161/D3161M, Class F, and with ASTM D7158/D7158M, Class H.

2.3 GLASS-FIBER-REINFORCED ASPHALT SHINGLES

- A. Laminated-Strip Asphalt Shingles: ASTM D3462/D3462M, laminated, multi-ply overlay construction; glass-fiber reinforced, mineral-granule surfaced, and self-sealing.
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Certainteed; SAINT-GOBAIN; Landmark Pro Shingles .
 - b. GAF; Timberline HDZ Shingles.
 - c. Owens Corning; Duration Shingles.
 - 2. Butt Edge: Straight cut.
 - 3. Strip Size: Manufacturer's standard 12"x36" .
 - 4. Algae Resistance: Granules resist algae discoloration.
 - 5. Color and Blends: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range .
- B. Three-Tab-Strip Asphalt Shingles: ASTM D3462/D3462M; glass-fiber reinforced, mineral-granule surfaced, and self-sealing; with tabs regularly spaced.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Certainteed; SAINT-GOBAIN; XT-25.
 - b. GAF; Marquis WeatherMax.
 - c. Owens Corning; Supreme.
 - 2. Strip Size: Manufacturer's standard .
 - 3. Algae Resistance: Granules resist algae discoloration.
 - 4. Color and Blends: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range .
- C. Hip and Ridge Shingles: Manufacturer's standard units to match asphalt shingles .

2.4 UNDERLAYMENT MATERIALS

- A. Synthetic Underlayment: UV-resistant polypropylene, polyolefin, or polyethylene polymer fabric with surface coatings or treatments to improve traction underfoot and abrasion resistance; evaluated and documented to be suitable for use as a roof underlayment under applicable codes by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Certainteed; SAINT-GOBAIN; DiamondDeck
 - b. GAF; DeckArmor.
 - c. Owens Corning; DeckDefense.
- B. Self-Adhering, Polymer-Modified Bitumen Waterproofing Sheet: ASTM D1970/D1970M, minimum 30-mil thick sheet; glass-fiber-mat-reinforced, polymer-modified asphalt; with slip-resistant top surface and release backing; cold applied. Provide primer for adjoining concrete, masonry, and metal surfaces to receive underlayment.
 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Certainteed; SAINT-GOBAIN; WinterGuard Granular Waterproofing Underlayment
 - b. GAF; StormGuard.
 - c. Owens Corning; WeatherLock Flex.
 2. Top Surface: Granule .

2.5 ACCESSORIES

- A. Asphalt Roofing Cement: ASTM D4586/D4586M Type II, asbestos free.
- B. Elastomeric Flashing Sealant: ASTM C920, Type S, Grade NS, one-part, non-sag, elastomeric polymer sealant; of class and use classifications required to seal joints and remain watertight; recommended in writing by manufacturer for installation of flashing systems.
- C. Roofing Nails: ASTM F1667, aluminum, stainless steel, copper, or hot-dip galvanized-steel wire shingle nails, minimum 0.120-inch- diameter, sharp-pointed, with a 3/8- to 7/16-inch- diameter flat head and of sufficient length to penetrate 3/4 inch into solid wood decking or extend at least 1/8 inch through sheathing less than 3/4 inch thick.
 1. Where nails are in contact with metal flashing, use nails made from same metal as flashing.
- D. Underlayment Nails: Aluminum, stainless steel, or hot-dip galvanized-steel wire nails with low-profile metal or plastic caps, 1-inch- minimum diameter.

2.6 METAL FLASHING AND TRIM

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 076200 "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim."
- B. Fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim to comply with recommendations in SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" that apply to design, dimensions, metal, and other characteristics of the item unless otherwise specified in this Section or indicated on Drawings.
 1. Apron Flashings: Fabricate with lower flange a minimum of 4 inches over and 4 inches beyond each side of downslope asphalt shingles and 6 inches up the vertical surface.
 2. Step Flashings: Fabricate with a headlap of 2 inches and a minimum extension of 4 inches over the underlying asphalt shingle and up the vertical surface.

3. Cricket and Backer Flashings: Fabricate with concealed flange extending a minimum of 24 inches beneath upslope asphalt shingles and 6 inches above the roof plane.
4. Counterflashings: Fabricate to cover 4 inches of base flashing measured vertically; and in lengths required so that no step exceeds 8 inches and overall length is no more than 10 feet .
 - a. Provide metal reglets for installation.
5. Open-Valley Flashings: Fabricate from metal sheet not less than 24 inches wide in lengths not exceeding 10 feet , with 1-inch- high, inverted-V profile water diverter at center of valley and equal flange widths of not less than 11 inches .
 - a. Hem flange edges for fastening with metal cleats.
 - b. Add stiffening ribs in flashings to promote drainage.
6. Drip Edges: Fabricate in lengths not exceeding 10 feet with minimum 2-inch roof-deck flange and 1-1/2-inch fascia flange with 3/8-inch drip at lower edge.
7. Vent-Pipe Flashings: ASTM B749, Type L51121, at least 1/16 inch thick. Provide lead sleeve sized to slip over and turn down into pipe, soldered to skirt at slope of roof, and extending at least 4 inches from pipe onto roof.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
 1. Examine roof sheathing to verify that sheathing joints are supported by framing and blocking or metal clips and that installation is within flatness tolerances.
 2. Verify that substrate is sound, dry, smooth, clean, sloped for drainage, and completely anchored and that provisions have been made for flashings and penetrations through asphalt shingles.
 3. Verify that vent stacks and other penetrations through roofing are installed and securely fastened.
- B. Prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance of the Work.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION OF UNDERLAYMENT MATERIALS

- A. Comply with asphalt shingle and underlayment manufacturers' written installation instructions and with recommendations in NRCA's "The NRCA Roofing Manual: Steep-Slope Roof Systems" applicable to products and applications indicated unless more stringent requirements are specified in this Section or indicated on Drawings.
- B. Synthetic Underlayment:
 1. Install on roof deck parallel with and starting at the eaves.
 - a. Lap sides and ends as recommended in writing by manufacturer, but not less than 4 inches for side laps and 6 inches for end laps.

- b. Stagger end laps between succeeding courses at interval recommended in writing by manufacturer, but not less than 72 inches.
 - c. Fasten with underlayment nails in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.
 - d. Cover underlayment within period recommended in writing by manufacturer.
 2. Install in single layer on roofs sloped at 4:12 and greater.
 3. Install synthetic underlayment on roof deck not covered by self-adhering, waterproofing sheet unless otherwise specified in this Section or indicated on Drawings.
 - a. Lap sides of underlayment over self-adhering sheet not less than 4 inches in direction to shed water.
 - b. Lap ends of underlayment not less than 6 inches over self-adhering sheet.
 4. Install fasteners in a grid pattern of 12 inches between side laps with 6-inch spacing at side and end laps.
 5. Terminate synthetic underlayment extended up not less than 4 inches against sidewalls, curbs, chimneys, and other roof projections.
- C. Self-Adhering, Waterproofing Sheet: Install, wrinkle free, on roof deck.
 1. Comply with low-temperature installation restrictions of underlayment manufacturer.
 2. Install lapped in direction that sheds water.
 - a. Lap sides not less than 4 inches.
 - b. Lap ends not less than 6 inches, staggered 24 inches between succeeding courses.
 - c. Roll laps with roller.
 3. Prime concrete, masonry, and metal surfaces to receive self-adhering sheet.
 4. Eaves: Extend from edges of eaves 24 inches beyond interior face of exterior wall.
 5. Rakes: Extend from edges of rakes 24 inches beyond interior face of exterior wall.
 6. Valleys: Extend from lowest to highest point 18 inches on each side of centerline.
 7. Hips: Extend 18 inches on each side.
 8. Ridges: Extend 36 inches on each side.
 9. Sidewalls: Extend 18 inches beyond sidewalls and return vertically against sidewalls not less than 4 inches .
 10. Dormers, Chimneys, Skylights, and Other Roof-Penetrating Elements: Extend 18 inches beyond penetrating elements and return vertically against penetrating elements not less than 4 inches .
 11. Roof-Slope Transitions: Extend 18 inches on each roof slope.
 12. Cover underlayment within seven days.
- D. Metal-Flashed, Open-Valley Waterproofing Sheet Underlayment: Install two layers of minimum 36-inch- wide underlayment centered in valley.
 1. Stagger end laps between layers at least 72 inches.
 2. Lap ends of each layer at least 12 inches in direction that sheds water, and seal with asphalt roofing cement.
 3. Fasten each layer to roof deck with underlayment nails located as far from valley center as possible and only to extent necessary to hold underlayment in place until installation of valley flashing.
 4. Lap roof-deck underlayment over first layer of valley underlayment at least 6 inches.
- E. Granular-Surfaced, Open-Valley Lining: Before installing valley lining, install 36-inch- wide underlayment centered in valley. Fasten to roof deck with underlayment nails.
 1. Lap roof-deck underlayment over valley underlayment at least 6 inches.

2. Install an 18-inch- wide strip of valley lining centered in valley, with granular-surface face down.
3. Install a second 36-inch- wide strip of valley lining centered in valley, with granular-surface face up.
4. Lap ends of each strip at least 12 inches in direction to shed water, and seal with asphalt roofing cement.
5. Stagger end laps between succeeding strips at least 72 inches.
6. Fasten each strip to roof deck.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF METAL FLASHING AND TRIM

- A. Install metal flashings and trim to comply with requirements in Section 076200 "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim."
 1. Install metal flashings in accordance with recommendations in NRCA's "NRCA Guidelines for Asphalt Shingle Roof Systems."
 2. Bed flanges of metal flashings using asphalt roofing cement or elastomeric flashing sealant.
- B. Apron Flashings: Extend lower flange over and beyond each side of downslope asphalt shingles and up the vertical surface.
- C. Step Flashings: Install with a headlap of 2 inches and extend over underlying shingle and up the vertical face.
 1. Install with lower edge of flashing just upslope of, and concealed by, butt of overlying shingle.
 2. Fasten to roof deck only.
- D. Cricket and Backer Flashings: Install against roof-penetrating elements extending concealed flange beneath upslope asphalt shingles and beyond each side.
- E. Counterflashings: Coordinate with installation of base flashing and fit tightly to base flashing. Lap joints a minimum of 4 inches secured in a waterproof manner.
 1. Install in reglets or receivers.
- F. Open-Valley Flashings: Install centered in valleys, lapping ends at least 8 inches in direction that sheds water. Fasten upper end of each length to roof deck beneath overlap.
 1. Secure hemmed flange edges into metal cleats spaced 12 inches apart and fastened to roof deck.
 2. Adhere minimum 9-inch- wide strips of self-adhering, waterproofing sheet to metal flanges and to underlying self-adhering sheet.
 - a. Place strips parallel to and over flanges so that they will be just concealed by installed shingles.
 3. Provide a closure at the end of the inverted-V profile of the valley metal to minimize water and ice infiltration.
- G. Rake Drip Edges: Install over underlayment materials and fasten to roof deck.
- H. Eave Drip Edges: Install below underlayment materials and fasten to roof deck.

- I. Pipe Flashings: Form flashing around pipe penetrations and asphalt shingles. Fasten and seal to asphalt shingles as recommended by manufacturer.

3.4 INSTALLATION OF ASPHALT SHINGLES

- A. Install asphalt shingles in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations in NRCA's "NRCA Guidelines for Asphalt Shingle Roof Systems."
- B. Install starter strip along lowest roof edge, consisting of an asphalt shingle strip with tabs removed at least 7 inches wide with self-sealing strip face up at roof edge.
 1. Extend asphalt shingles 1/2 inch over fasciae at eaves and rakes.
 2. Install starter strip along rake edge.
- C. Install first and remaining courses of laminated asphalt shingles stair-stepping diagonally across roof deck with manufacturer's recommended offset pattern at succeeding courses, maintaining uniform exposure.
- D. Install first and remaining courses of three-tab-strip asphalt shingles stair-stepping diagonally across roof deck with manufacturer's recommended offset pattern at succeeding courses, maintaining uniform exposure.
- E. Fasten asphalt shingle strips with a minimum of six roofing nails, but not less than the number indicated in manufacturer's written instructions for roof slope and design wind speed indicated on Drawings and for warranty requirements specified in this Section.
 1. Locate fasteners in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.
 2. Where roof slope is less than 4:12, hand seal self-sealing asphalt shingles to improve the shingles' positive bond by applying asphalt roofing cement spots between course overlaps after nailing the upper course.
 3. When ambient temperature during installation is below 50 deg F , hand seal self-sealing asphalt shingles by applying asphalt roofing cement spots between course overlaps after nailing the upper course.
- F. Open Valleys: Cut and fit asphalt shingles at open valleys, trimming upper concealed corners of shingle strips.
 1. Maintain uniform width of exposed open valley from highest to lowest point.
 2. Extend shingle a minimum of 4 inches over valley metal.
 3. Set valley edge of asphalt shingles in a 3-inch- wide bed of asphalt roofing cement.
 4. Do not nail asphalt shingles to metal open-valley flashings.
- G. Hip and Ridge Shingles: Maintain same exposure of cap shingles as roofing-shingle exposure. Lap cap shingles at ridges to shed water away from direction of prevailing winds.
 1. Fasten with roofing nails of sufficient length to penetrate sheathing.

END OF SECTION 073113

SECTION 075323 - ETHYLENE-PROPYLENE-DIENE-MONOMER (EPDM) ROOFING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Adhered ethylene-propylene-diene-terpolymer (EPDM) roofing system.
2. Accessory roofing materials.
3. Substrate board.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 061000 "Rough Carpentry for wood nailers, curbs, and blocking.
2. Section 061600 "Sheathing" for wood-based, structural-use roof deck panels.
3. Section 076200 "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim" for metal roof flashings and counterflashings.
4. Section 079200 "Joint Sealants" for joint sealants, joint fillers, and joint preparation.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- ##### A. Roofing Terminology: Definitions in ASTM D1079 and glossary of NRCA's "The NRCA Roofing Manual: Membrane Roof Systems" apply to work of this Section.

1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

A. Preinstallation Roofing Conference: Conduct conference at Project site .

1. Meet with Owner, Architect, roofing Installer, roofing system manufacturer's representative, deck Installer, air barrier Installer, and installers whose work interfaces with or affects roofing.
2. Review methods and procedures related to roofing installation, including manufacturer's written instructions.
3. Review and finalize construction schedule, and verify availability of materials, Installer's personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
4. Examine deck substrate conditions and finishes, including flatness and fastening.
5. Review structural loading limitations of roof deck during and after roofing.
6. Review base flashings, special roofing details, roof drainage, roof penetrations, equipment curbs, and condition of other construction that affects roofing system.
7. Review governing regulations and requirements for insurance and certificates if applicable.
8. Review temporary protection requirements for roofing system during and after installation.
9. Review roof observation and repair procedures after roofing installation.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: Include roof plans, sections, details, and attachments to other work, including the following:
 - 1. Base flashings and membrane terminations.
 - 2. Flashing details at penetrations.
 - 3. Tie-in with air barrier.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Sample Warranties: For manufacturer's special warranties.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Qualifications:
 - 1. Installers: A qualified firm that is approved, authorized, or licensed by roofing system manufacturer to install manufacturer's product and that is eligible to receive manufacturer's special warranty.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver roofing materials to Project site in original containers with seals unbroken and labeled with manufacturer's name, product brand name and type, date of manufacture, approval or listing agency markings, and directions for storing and mixing with other components.
- B. Store liquid materials in their original undamaged containers in a clean, dry, protected location and within the temperature range required by roofing system manufacturer. Protect stored liquid material from direct sunlight.
 - 1. Discard and legally dispose of liquid material that cannot be applied within its stated shelf life.
- C. Protect roof insulation materials from physical damage and from deterioration by sunlight, moisture, soiling, and other sources. Store in a dry location. Comply with insulation manufacturer's written instructions for handling, storing, and protecting during installation.
- D. Handle and store roofing materials, and place equipment in a manner to avoid permanent deflection of deck.

1.9 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Weather Limitations: Proceed with installation only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit roofing system to be installed according to manufacturer's written instructions and warranty requirements.

1.10 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of roofing system that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Special warranty includes roof membrane, base flashings, fasteners, and other components of roofing system.
 - 2. Warranty Period: 20 years from Date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General Performance: Installed roofing system and base flashings to withstand specified uplift pressures, thermally induced movement, and exposure to weather without failure due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction. Roofing and flashings to remain watertight.
 - 1. Accelerated Weathering: Roof membrane to withstand 2000 hours of exposure when tested according to ASTM G152, ASTM G154, or ASTM G155.
 - 2. Impact Resistance: Roof membrane to resist impact damage when tested according to ASTM D3746, ASTM D4272, or the "Resistance to Foot Traffic Test" in FM Approvals 4470.
- B. Material Compatibility: Roofing materials to be compatible with one another and adjacent materials under conditions of service and application required, as demonstrated by roof membrane manufacturer based on testing and field experience.

2.2 ETHYLENE-PROPYLENE-DIENE-TERPOLYMER (EPDM) ROOFING

- A. Fabric-Backed EPDM Sheet: ASTM D4637/D4637M, Type III, nonreinforced, EPDM sheet, laminated to a nonwoven polyester fabric backing except at selvages.
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Firestone; RubberGard Non-Reinforced EPDM Membrane
 - b. Johns Manville; EPDM NR
 - c. Versico Roofing Systems; Carlisle Construction Materials; Fabric-Backed EPDM Sheet .
 - 2. Composite Thickness: 60 mils , nominal.
 - 3. Exposed Face Color: Black .

4. Source Limitations: Obtain components for roofing system from roof membrane manufacturer or manufacturers approved by roof membrane manufacturer.

2.3 ACCESSORY ROOFING MATERIALS

- A. General: Accessory materials recommended by roofing system manufacturer for intended use and compatible with other roofing components.
- B. Sheet Flashing: 60-mil- thick EPDM, partially cured or cured, according to application.
- C. Bonding Adhesive: Manufacturer's standard.
- D. Modified Asphaltic Fabric-Backed Membrane Adhesive: Roofing system manufacturer's standard modified asphalt, asbestos-free, cold-applied adhesive formulated for compatibility and use with fabric-backed membrane roofing.
- E. Seaming Material: Manufacturer's standard, synthetic-rubber polymer primer and 3-inch- wide minimum, butyl splice tape with release film .
- F. Lap Sealant: Manufacturer's standard, single-component sealant , colored to match membrane roofing.
- G. Metal Termination Bars: Manufacturer's standard, predrilled stainless steel or aluminum bars, approximately 1 by 1/8 inch thick; with anchors.
- H. Fasteners: Factory-coated steel fasteners and metal or plastic plates complying with corrosion-resistance provisions in FM Approvals 4470, designed for fastening components to substrate, and acceptable to roofing system manufacturer.
- I. Miscellaneous Accessories: Provide pourable sealers, preformed cone and vent sheet flashings, molded pipe boot flashings, preformed inside and outside corner sheet flashings, reinforced EPDM securement strips, T-joint covers, in-seam sealants, termination reglets, cover strips, and other accessories.

2.4 SUBSTRATE BOARD

- A. Glass-Mat Gypsum Roof Substrate Board: ASTM C1177/C1177M, water-resistant gypsum board.
 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Certainteed; SAINT-GOBAIN.
 - b. Georgia-Pacific Gypsum LLC.
 - c. USG Corporation.
 2. Thickness: 1/2 inch .
 3. Surface Finish: Unprimed.
- B. Fasteners: Factory-coated steel fasteners and metal or plastic plates complying with corrosion-resistance provisions in FM Approvals 4470, designed for fastening substrate panel to roof deck.

2.5 ASPHALT MATERIALS

- A. Roofing Asphalt: ASTM D312/D312M, Type III or Type IV .

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
 - 1. Verify that wood blocking, curbs, and nailers are securely anchored to roof deck at penetrations and terminations and that nailers match thicknesses of insulation.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Clean substrate of dust, debris, moisture, and other substances detrimental to roofing system installation according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions. Remove sharp projections.
- B. Prevent materials from entering and clogging roof drains and conductors and from spilling or migrating onto surfaces of other construction. Remove roof-drain plugs when no work is taking place or when rain is forecast.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF ROOFING, GENERAL

- A. Install roofing system according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions, assembly requirements, and FM Global Property Loss Prevention Data Sheet 1-29.
- B. Complete terminations and base flashings and provide temporary seals to prevent water from entering completed sections of roofing system at end of workday or when rain is forecast. Remove and discard temporary seals before beginning work on adjoining roofing.
- C. Install roof membrane and auxiliary materials to tie in to existing roofing to maintain weathertightness of transition.

3.4 INSTALLATION OF SUBSTRATE BOARD

- A. Install substrate board with long joints in continuous straight lines, with end joints staggered not less than 24 inches in adjacent rows.
 - 1. Tightly butt substrate boards together.
 - 2. Cut substrate board to fit tight around penetrations and projections, and to fit tight to intersecting sloping roof decks.

3.5 INSTALLATION OF ADHERED ROOF MEMBRANE

- A. Adhere roof membrane over area to receive roofing according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Unroll membrane roof membrane and allow to relax before installing.
- C. Accurately align roof membrane, and maintain uniform side and end laps of minimum dimensions required by manufacturer. Stagger end laps.
- D. Bonding Adhesive: Apply to substrate and underside of roof membrane at rate required by manufacturer, and allow to partially dry before installing roof membrane. Do not apply to splice area of roof membrane.
- E. Fabric-Backed Roof Membrane Adhesive: Apply to substrate at rate required by manufacturer, and install fabric-backed roof membrane.
- F. In addition to adhering, mechanically fasten roof membrane securely at terminations, penetrations, and perimeters.
- G. Apply roof membrane with side laps shingled with slope of roof deck where possible.
- H. Tape Seam Installation: Clean and prime both faces of splice areas, apply splice tape.
 - 1. Firmly roll side and end laps of overlapping roof membrane to ensure a watertight seam installation.
 - 2. Apply lap sealant and seal exposed edges of roofing terminations.
- I. Repair tears, voids, and lapped seams in roof membrane that do not comply with requirements.

3.6 INSTALLATION OF BASE FLASHING

- A. Install sheet flashings and preformed flashing accessories, and adhere to substrates according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Apply bonding adhesive to substrate and underside of sheet flashing at required rate, and allow to partially dry. Do not apply to seam area of flashing.
- C. Flash penetrations and field-formed inside and outside corners with cured or uncured sheet flashing.
- D. Clean splice areas, apply splicing cement, and firmly roll side and end laps of overlapping sheets to ensure a watertight seam installation. Apply lap sealant and seal exposed edges of sheet flashing terminations.
- E. Terminate and seal top of sheet flashings and mechanically anchor to substrate through termination bars.

3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Final Roof Inspection: Arrange for roofing system manufacturer's technical personnel to inspect roofing installation on completion, in presence of Architect, and to prepare inspection report.

3.8 PROTECTING AND CLEANING

- A. Protect roofing system from damage and wear during remainder of construction period. When remaining construction does not affect or endanger roofing system, inspect roofing system for deterioration and damage, describing its nature and extent in a written report, with copies to Architect and Owner.
- B. Correct deficiencies in or remove roofing system that does not comply with requirements, repair substrates, and repair or reinstall roofing system to a condition free of damage and deterioration at time of Substantial Completion and according to warranty requirements.
- C. Clean overspray and spillage from adjacent construction using cleaning agents and procedures recommended by manufacturer of affected construction.

END OF SECTION 075323

SECTION 076200 - SHEET METAL FLASHING AND TRIM

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Roof-drainage sheet metal fabrications.
2. Steep-slope roof sheet metal fabrications.
3. Miscellaneous sheet metal fabrications.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 061000 "Rough Carpentry" for wood nailers, curbs, and blocking.

1.2 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sheet metal flashing and trim layout and seams with sizes and locations of penetrations to be flashed, and joints and seams in adjacent materials.
- B. Coordinate sheet metal flashing and trim installation with adjoining roofing and wall materials, joints, and seams to provide leakproof, secure, and noncorrosive installation.

1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site .

1. Review construction schedule. Verify availability of materials, Installer's personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
2. Review special roof details, roof drainage, roof-penetration flashing, equipment curbs, and condition of other construction that affect sheet metal flashing and trim.
3. Review sheet metal flashing observation and repair procedures after flashing installation.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each of the following

1. Underlayment materials.

B. Shop Drawings: For sheet metal flashing and trim.

1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.
2. Detail fabrication and installation layouts, expansion-joint locations, and keyed details. Distinguish between shop- and field-assembled Work.
3. Include identification of material, thickness, weight, and finish for each item and location in Project.

4. Include details for forming, including profiles, shapes, seams, and dimensions.
5. Include details for joining, supporting, and securing, including layout and spacing of fasteners, cleats, clips, and other attachments. Include pattern of seams.
6. Include details of termination points and assemblies.
7. Include details of roof-penetration flashing.
8. Include details of edge conditions, including eaves, ridges, valleys, rakes, crickets, flashings, and counterflashings.
9. Include details of special conditions.
10. Include details of connections to adjoining work.
11. Detail formed flashing and trim at scale of not less than 3 inches per 12 inches .

- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of sheet metal and accessory indicated with factory-applied finishes.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For fabricator.
- B. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For sheet metal flashing and trim, and its accessories, to include in maintenance manuals.
- B. Special warranty.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Fabricator Qualifications: Employs skilled workers who custom fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim similar to that required for this Project and whose products have a record of successful in-service performance.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Do not store sheet metal flashing and trim materials in contact with other materials that might cause staining, denting, or other surface damage.
 1. Store sheet metal flashing and trim materials away from uncured concrete and masonry.
 2. Protect stored sheet metal flashing and trim from contact with water.
- B. Protect strippable protective covering on sheet metal flashing and trim from exposure to sunlight and high humidity, except to extent necessary for period of sheet metal flashing and trim installation.

1.9 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty on Finishes: Manufacturer agrees to repair finish or replace sheet metal flashing and trim that shows evidence of deterioration of factory-applied finishes within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Exposed Panel Finish: Deterioration includes, but is not limited to, the following:
 - a. Color fading more than 5 Delta E units when tested in accordance with ASTM D2244.
 - b. Chalking in excess of a No. 8 rating when tested in accordance with ASTM D4214.
 - c. Cracking, checking, peeling, or failure of paint to adhere to bare metal.
 - 2. Finish Warranty Period: 20 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Sheet metal flashing and trim assemblies, including cleats, anchors, and fasteners, are to withstand wind loads, structural movement, thermally induced movement, and exposure to weather without failure due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction. Completed sheet metal flashing and trim are not to rattle, leak, or loosen, and are to remain watertight.
- B. Sheet Metal Standard for Flashing and Trim: Comply with NRCA's "The NRCA Roofing Manual: Architectural Metal Flashing, Condensation and Air Leakage Control, and Reroofing" and SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" requirements for dimensions and profiles shown unless more stringent requirements are indicated.
- C. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes to prevent buckling, opening of joints, overstressing of components, failure of joint sealants, failure of connections, and other detrimental effects. Base calculations on surface temperatures of materials due to both solar heat gain and nighttime-sky heat loss.
 - 1. Temperature Change: 120 deg F , ambient; 180 deg F , material surfaces .

2.2 SHEET METALS

- A. Protect mechanical and other finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying strippable, temporary protective film before shipping.
- B. Aluminum Sheet: ASTM B209, alloy as standard with manufacturer for finish required, with temper as required to suit forming operations and performance required; with smooth, flat embossed surface.
 - 1. Exposed Coil-Coated Finish:
 - a. Two-Coat Fluoropolymer: AAMA 2605. Fluoropolymer finish containing not less than 70 percent polyvinylidene fluoride (PVDF) resin by weight in color coat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
 - 2. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range .

2.3 UNDERLAYMENT MATERIALS

- A. Self-Adhering, High-Temperature Sheet Underlayment: Minimum 30 mils thick, consisting of a slip-resistant polyethylene- or polypropylene-film top surface laminated to a layer of butyl- or SBS-modified asphalt adhesive, with release-paper backing; specifically designed to withstand high metal temperatures beneath metal roofing. Provide primer in accordance with underlayment manufacturer's written instructions.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Certainteed; SAINT-GOBAIN; WinterGuard Granular Waterproofing Underlayment.
 - b. GAF; StormGuard.
 - c. Owens Corning; WeatherLock Flex.
 2. Source Limitations: Obtain underlayment from single source from single manufacturer.
 3. Low-Temperature Flexibility: ASTM D1970/D1970M; passes after testing at minus 20 deg F or lower.
- B. Slip Sheet: Rosin-sized building paper, 3 lb/100 sq. ft. minimum.

2.4 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Provide materials and types of fasteners, solder, protective coatings, sealants, and other miscellaneous items as required for complete sheet metal flashing and trim installation and as recommended by manufacturer of primary sheet metal or manufactured item unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Fasteners: Wood screws, annular threaded nails, self-tapping screws, self-locking rivets and bolts, and other suitable fasteners designed to withstand design loads and recommended by manufacturer of primary sheet metal or manufactured item.
1. General: Blind fasteners or self-drilling screws, gasketed, with hex-washer head.
 - a. Exposed Fasteners: Heads matching color of sheet metal using plastic caps or factory-applied coating. Provide metal-backed EPDM or PVC sealing washers under heads of exposed fasteners bearing on weather side of metal.
 - b. Blind Fasteners: High-strength aluminum or stainless steel rivets suitable for metal being fastened.
 2. Fasteners for Aluminum Sheet: Aluminum or Series 300 stainless steel.
- C. Sealant Tape: Pressure-sensitive, 100 percent solids, polyisobutylene compound sealant tape with release-paper backing. Provide permanently elastic, nonsag, nontoxic, nonstaining tape 1/2 inch wide and 1/8 inch thick.
- D. Elastomeric Sealant: ASTM C920, elastomeric polyurethane polysulfide silicone polymer sealant; of type, grade, class, and use classifications required to seal joints in sheet metal flashing and trim and remain watertight.
- E. Butyl Sealant: ASTM C1311, single-component, solvent-release butyl rubber sealant; polyisobutylene plasticized; heavy bodied for hooked-type expansion joints with limited movement.

- F. Epoxy Seam Sealer: Two-part, noncorrosive, aluminum seam-cementing compound, recommended by aluminum manufacturer for exterior nonmoving joints, including riveted joints.
- G. Bituminous Coating: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion in accordance with ASTM D1187/D1187M.
- H. Asphalt Roofing Cement: ASTM D4586, asbestos free, of consistency required for application.
- I. Reglets: Units of type, material, and profile required, formed to provide secure interlocking of separate reglet and counterflashing pieces, and compatible with flashing indicated with factory-mitered and -welded corners and junctions and with interlocking counterflashing on exterior face, of same metal as reglet.
 - 1. Source Limitations: Obtain reglets from single source from single manufacturer.
 - 2. Material: Aluminum, 0.024 inch thick .
 - 3. Surface-Mounted Type: Provide with slotted holes for fastening to substrate, with neoprene or other suitable weatherproofing washers, and with channel for sealant at top edge.
 - 4. Masonry Type: Provide with offset top flange for embedment in masonry mortar joint.
 - 5. Accessories:
 - a. Flexible-Flashing Retainer: Provide resilient plastic or rubber accessory to secure flexible flashing in reglet where clearance does not permit use of standard metal counterflashing or where Drawings show reglet without metal counterflashing.
 - b. Counterflashing Wind-Restraint Clips: Provide clips to be installed before counterflashing to prevent wind uplift of counterflashing's lower edge.
 - 6. Finish: With manufacturer's standard color coating .

2.5 FABRICATION, GENERAL

- A. Custom fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim to comply with details indicated and recommendations in cited sheet metal standard that apply to design, dimensions, geometry, metal thickness, and other characteristics of item required.
 - 1. Fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim in shop to greatest extent possible.
 - 2. Fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim in thickness or weight needed to comply with performance requirements, but not less than that specified for each application and metal.
 - 3. Verify shapes and dimensions of surfaces to be covered and obtain field measurements for accurate fit before shop fabrication.
 - 4. Form sheet metal flashing and trim to fit substrates without excessive oil-canning, buckling, and tool marks; true to line, levels, and slopes; and with exposed edges folded back to form hems.
 - 5. Conceal fasteners and expansion provisions where possible. Do not use exposed fasteners on faces exposed to view.
- B. Fabrication Tolerances:
 - 1. Fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim that is capable of installation to tolerances specified.
- C. Expansion Provisions: Form metal for thermal expansion of exposed flashing and trim.

1. Form expansion joints of intermeshing hooked flanges, not less than 1 inch deep, filled with butyl sealant concealed within joints.
 2. Use lapped expansion joints only where indicated on Drawings.
- D. Sealant Joints: Where movable, nonexpansion-type joints are required, form metal in accordance with cited sheet metal standard to provide for proper installation of elastomeric sealant.
- E. Fabricate cleats and attachment devices from same material as accessory being anchored or from compatible, noncorrosive metal.
- F. Fabricate cleats and attachment devices of sizes as recommended by cited sheet metal standard for application, but not less than thickness of metal being secured.
- G. Seams:
1. Fabricate nonmoving seams with flat-lock seams. Form seams and seal with elastomeric sealant unless otherwise recommended by sealant manufacturer for intended use. Rivet joints where necessary for strength.
 2. Seams for Aluminum: Fabricate nonmoving seams with flat-lock seams. Form seams and seal with epoxy seam sealer. Rivet joints where necessary for strength.
- H. Do not use graphite pencils to mark metal surfaces.

2.6 ROOF-DRAINAGE SHEET METAL FABRICATIONS

- A. Downspouts: Fabricate round downspouts to dimensions indicated on Drawings, in Style per Fig. 1-31B, profile 3, in accordance with SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" and to match existing, complete with mitered elbows. Furnish with metal hangers from same material as downspouts and anchors . Shop fabricate elbows.
1. Fabricated Hanger Style: Fig. 1-35D in accordance with SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual."
 2. Fabricate from the following materials:
 - a. Aluminum: 0.024 inch thick.
- B. Conductor Heads: Fabricate conductor heads with flanged back and stiffened top edge and of dimensions and shape required, complete with outlet tubes , exterior flange trim, . Fabricate from the following materials:
1. Aluminum: 0.032 inch thick.

2.7 STEEP-SLOPE ROOF SHEET METAL FABRICATIONS

- A. Apron, Step, Cricket, and Backer Flashing: Fabricate from the following materials:
1. Aluminum: 0.032 inch thick.
- B. Drip Edges: Fabricate from the following materials:
1. Aluminum: 0.032 inch thick.

- C. Eave, Rake, Ridge, and Hip Flashing: Fabricate from the following materials:
 - 1. Aluminum: 0.032 inch thick.
- D. Counterflashing: Shop fabricate interior and exterior corners. Fabricate from the following materials:
 - 1. Aluminum: 0.032 inch thick.
- E. Flashing Receivers: Fabricate from the following materials:
 - 1. Aluminum: 0.032 inch thick.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, substrate, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
 - 1. Verify compliance with requirements for installation tolerances of substrates.
 - 2. Verify that substrate is sound, dry, smooth, clean, sloped for drainage, and securely anchored.
 - 3. Verify that air- or water-resistant barriers have been installed over sheathing or backing substrate to prevent air infiltration or water penetration.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION OF UNDERLAYMENT

- A. Synthetic Underlayment: Install synthetic underlayment, wrinkle free, in accordance with manufacturers' written instructions, and using adhesive where possible to minimize use of mechanical fasteners under sheet metal.
 - 1. Lap horizontal joints not less than 4 inches.
 - 2. Lap end joints not less than 12 inches.
- B. Self-Adhering, High-Temperature Sheet Underlayment:
 - 1. Install self-adhering, high-temperature sheet underlayment; wrinkle free.
 - 2. Prime substrate if recommended by underlayment manufacturer.
 - 3. Comply with temperature restrictions of underlayment manufacturer for installation; use primer for installing underlayment at low temperatures.
 - 4. Apply in shingle fashion to shed water, with end laps of not less than 6 inches staggered 24 inches between courses.
 - 5. Overlap side edges not less than 3-1/2 inches. Roll laps and edges with roller.
 - 6. Roll laps and edges with roller.
 - 7. Cover underlayment within 14 days.

- C. Install slip sheet, wrinkle free, over underlayment directly on substrate before installing sheet metal flashing and trim.
 - 1. Install in shingle fashion to shed water.
 - 2. Lapp joints not less than 4 inches.

3.3 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Install sheet metal flashing and trim to comply with details indicated and recommendations of cited sheet metal standard that apply to installation characteristics required unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.
 - 1. Install fasteners , solder, protective coatings, separators, sealants, and other miscellaneous items as required to complete sheet metal flashing and trim system.
 - 2. Install sheet metal flashing and trim true to line, levels, and slopes. Provide uniform, neat seams with minimum exposure of solder sealant.
 - 3. Anchor sheet metal flashing and trim and other components of the Work securely in place, with provisions for thermal and structural movement.
 - 4. Install sheet metal flashing and trim to fit substrates and to result in watertight performance.
 - 5. Install continuous cleats with fasteners spaced not more than 12 inches o.c.
 - 6. Space individual cleats not more than 12 inches apart. Attach each cleat with at least two fasteners. Bend tabs over fasteners.
 - 7. Install exposed sheet metal flashing and trim with limited oil-canning, and free of buckling and tool marks.
 - 8. Do not field cut sheet metal flashing and trim by torch.
 - 9. Do not use graphite pencils to mark metal surfaces.
- B. Metal Protection: Where dissimilar metals contact each other, or where metal contacts pressure-treated wood or other corrosive substrates, protect against galvanic action or corrosion by painting contact surfaces with bituminous coating or by other permanent separation as recommended by sheet metal manufacturer or cited sheet metal standard.
 - 1. Coat concealed side of uncoated-aluminum sheet metal flashing and trim with bituminous coating where flashing and trim contact wood, ferrous metal, or cementitious construction.
 - 2. Underlayment: Where installing sheet metal flashing and trim directly on cementitious or wood substrates, install underlayment and cover with slip sheet.
- C. Expansion Provisions: Provide for thermal expansion of exposed flashing and trim.
 - 1. Space movement joints at maximum of 10 feet with no joints within 24 inches of corner or intersection.
 - 2. Form expansion joints of intermeshing hooked flanges, not less than 1 inch deep, filled with sealant concealed within joints.
 - 3. Use lapped expansion joints only where indicated on Drawings.
- D. Fasteners: Use fastener sizes that penetrate wood blocking or sheathing not less than 1-1/4 inches for nails and not less than 3/4 inch for wood screws substrate not less than recommended by fastener manufacturer to achieve maximum pull-out resistance .

- E. Conceal fasteners and expansion provisions where possible in exposed work and locate to minimize possibility of leakage. Cover and seal fasteners and anchors as required for a tight installation.
- F. Seal joints as required for watertight construction.
 - 1. Use sealant-filled joints unless otherwise indicated.
 - a. Embed hooked flanges of joint members not less than 1 inch into sealant.
 - b. Form joints to completely conceal sealant.
 - c. When ambient temperature at time of installation is between 40 and 70 deg F, set joint members for 50 percent movement each way.
 - d. Adjust setting proportionately for installation at higher ambient temperatures.
 - 1) Do not install sealant-type joints at temperatures below 40 deg F.
 - 2. Prepare joints and apply sealants to comply with requirements in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."

3.4 INSTALLATION OF ROOF-DRAINAGE SYSTEM

- A. Install sheet metal roof-drainage items to produce complete roof-drainage system in accordance with cited sheet metal standard unless otherwise indicated. Coordinate installation of roof perimeter flashing with installation of roof-drainage system.
- B. Downspouts:
 - 1. Join sections with 1-1/2-inch telescoping joints.
 - 2. Provide hangers with fasteners designed to hold downspouts securely to walls.
 - 3. Locate hangers at top and bottom and at approximately 60 inches o.c.
 - 4. Provide elbows at base of downspout to direct water away from building.
- C. Conductor Heads: Anchor securely to wall, with elevation of conductor head rim at minimum of 1 inch below scupper or gutter discharge.

3.5 INSTALLATION OF ROOF FLASHINGS

- A. Install sheet metal flashing and trim to comply with performance requirements, sheet metal manufacturer's written installation instructions, and cited sheet metal standard.
 - 1. Provide concealed fasteners where possible, and set units true to line, levels, and slopes.
 - 2. Install work with laps, joints, and seams that are permanently watertight and weather resistant.
- B. Roof Edge Flashing:
 - 1. Install roof edge flashings in accordance with ANSI/SPRI/FM 4435/ES-1.
 - 2. Anchor to resist uplift and outward forces in accordance with recommendations in cited sheet metal standard unless otherwise indicated. Interlock bottom edge of roof edge flashing with continuous cleat anchored to substrate at staggered 3-inch centers.
 - 3. Anchor to resist uplift and outward forces in accordance with recommendations in FM Global Property Loss Prevention Data Sheet 1-49 for FM Approvals' listing for required windstorm classification.

- C. Counterflashing: Coordinate installation of counterflashing with installation of base flashing.
 - 1. Insert counterflashing in reglets or receivers and fit tightly to base flashing.
 - 2. Extend counterflashing 4 inches over base flashing.
 - 3. Lap counterflashing joints minimum of 4 inches.
 - 4. Secure in waterproof manner by means of snap-in installation and sealant or lead wedges and sealant interlocking folded seam or blind rivets and sealant anchor and washer spaced at 12 inches o.c. along perimeter and 6 inches o.c. at corners areas unless otherwise indicated.

3.6 INSTALLATION TOLERANCES

- A. Installation Tolerances: Shim and align sheet metal flashing and trim within installed tolerance of 1/4 inch in 20 feet on slope and location lines indicated on Drawings and within 1/8-inch offset of adjoining faces and of alignment of matching profiles.

3.7 CLEANING

- A. Clean off excess sealants.

3.8 PROTECTION

- A. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films as sheet metal flashing and trim are installed unless otherwise indicated in manufacturer's written installation instructions.
- B. On completion of sheet metal flashing and trim installation, remove unused materials and clean finished surfaces as recommended in writing by sheet metal flashing and trim manufacturer.
- C. Maintain sheet metal flashing and trim in clean condition during construction.
- D. Replace sheet metal flashing and trim that have been damaged or that have deteriorated beyond successful repair by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures, as determined by Architect.

END OF SECTION 076200

SECTION 079200 - JOINT SEALANTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Nonstaining silicone joint sealants.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data:
 - 1. Joint sealants.
 - 2. Joint-sealant backing materials.
- B. Samples for Initial Selection: Manufacturer's standard color charts consisting of strips of cured sealants showing the full range of colors available for each product exposed to view.
- C. Joint-Sealant Schedule: Include the following information:
 - 1. Joint-sealant application, joint location, and designation.
 - 2. Joint-sealant manufacturer and product name.
 - 3. Joint-sealant formulation.
 - 4. Joint-sealant color.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Sample warranties.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Manufacturers' special warranties.
- B. Installer's special warranties.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Authorized representative who is trained and approved by manufacturer.

1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Do not proceed with installation of joint sealants under the following conditions:

1. When ambient and substrate temperature conditions are outside limits permitted by joint-sealant manufacturer or are below 40 deg F.
2. When joint substrates are wet.
3. Where joint widths are less than those allowed by joint-sealant manufacturer for applications indicated.
4. Where contaminants capable of interfering with adhesion have not yet been removed from joint substrates.

1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Special Installer's Warranty: Installer agrees to repair or replace joint sealants that do not comply with performance and other requirements specified in this Section within specified warranty period.
 1. Warranty Period: Two years from date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Special Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to furnish joint sealants to repair or replace those joint sealants that do not comply with performance and other requirements specified in this Section within specified warranty period.
 1. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.
- C. Special warranties specified in this article exclude deterioration or failure of joint sealants from the following:
 1. Movement of the structure caused by stresses on the sealant exceeding sealant manufacturer's written specifications for sealant elongation and compression.
 2. Disintegration of joint substrates from causes exceeding design specifications.
 3. Mechanical damage caused by individuals, tools, or other outside agents.
 4. Changes in sealant appearance caused by accumulation of dirt or other atmospheric contaminants.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SOURCE LIMITATIONS

- A. Obtain joint sealants from single manufacturer for each sealant type.

2.2 JOINT SEALANTS, GENERAL

- A. Compatibility: Provide joint sealants, backings, and other related materials that are compatible with one another and with joint substrates under conditions of service and application, as demonstrated by joint-sealant manufacturer, based on testing and field experience.
- B. Colors of Exposed Joint Sealants: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

2.3 NONSTAINING SILICONE JOINT SEALANTS

- A. Nonstaining Joint Sealants: No staining of substrates when tested in accordance with ASTM C1248.
- B. Silicone, Nonstaining, S, NS, 50, NT: Nonstaining, single-component, nonsag, plus 50 percent and minus 50 percent movement capability, nontraffic-use, neutral-curing silicone joint sealant; ASTM C920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 50, Use NT.
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Pecora Corporation; 890 NST.
 - b. The Dow Chemical Company; DOWSIL 795.
 - c. Tremco Incorporated; Spectrum 2.
 - d. Pecora Corporation.
 - e. Tremco Incorporated.

2.4 JOINT-SEALANT BACKING

- A. Sealant Backing Material, General: Nonstaining; compatible with joint substrates, sealants, primers, and other joint fillers; and approved for applications indicated by sealant manufacturer based on field experience and laboratory testing.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Adfast.
 - b. Alcot Plastics Ltd.
 - c. Construction Foam Products; a division of Nomaco, Inc.
 - d. Master Builders Solutions.
- B. Cylindrical Sealant Backings: ASTM C1330, Type C (closed-cell material with a surface skin) or any of the preceding types, as approved in writing by joint-sealant manufacturer for joint application indicated, and of size and density to control sealant depth and otherwise contribute to producing optimum sealant performance.
- C. Bond-Breaker Tape: Polyethylene tape or other plastic tape recommended by sealant manufacturer for preventing sealant from adhering to rigid, inflexible joint-filler materials or joint surfaces at back of joint. Provide self-adhesive tape where applicable.

2.5 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Primer: Material recommended by joint-sealant manufacturer where required for adhesion of sealant to joint substrates indicated, as determined from preconstruction joint-sealant-substrate tests and field tests.
- B. Cleaners for Nonporous Surfaces: Chemical cleaners acceptable to manufacturers of sealants and sealant backing materials, free of oily residues or other substances capable of staining or harming joint substrates and adjacent nonporous surfaces in any way, and formulated to promote optimum adhesion of sealants to joint substrates.

- C. Masking Tape: Nonstaining, nonabsorbent material compatible with joint sealants and surfaces adjacent to joints.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine joints indicated to receive joint sealants, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for joint configuration, installation tolerances, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Cleaning of Joints: Clean out joints immediately before installing joint sealants to comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions and the following requirements:
 - 1. Remove all foreign material from joint substrates that could interfere with adhesion of joint sealant, including dust, paints (except for permanent, protective coatings tested and approved for sealant adhesion and compatibility by sealant manufacturer), old joint sealants, oil, grease, waterproofing, water repellents, water, surface dirt, and frost.
 - 2. Clean porous joint substrate surfaces by brushing, grinding, mechanical abrading, or a combination of these methods to produce a clean, sound substrate capable of developing optimum bond with joint sealants. Remove loose particles remaining after cleaning operations above by vacuuming or blowing out joints with oil-free compressed air. Porous joint substrates include the following:
 - a. Concrete.
 - b. Masonry.
 - c. Wood
 - 3. Remove laitance and form-release agents from concrete.
 - 4. Clean nonporous joint substrate surfaces with chemical cleaners or other means that do not stain, harm substrates, or leave residues capable of interfering with adhesion of joint sealants. Nonporous joint substrates include the following:
 - a. Metal.
- B. Joint Priming: Prime joint substrates where recommended by joint-sealant manufacturer or as indicated by preconstruction joint-sealant-substrate tests or prior experience. Apply primer to comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions. Confine primers to areas of joint-sealant bond; do not allow spillage or migration onto adjoining surfaces.
- C. Masking Tape: Use masking tape where required to prevent contact of sealant or primer with adjoining surfaces that otherwise would be permanently stained or damaged by such contact or by cleaning methods required to remove sealant smears. Remove tape immediately after tooling without disturbing joint seal.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF JOINT SEALANTS

- A. General: Comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written installation instructions for products and applications indicated, unless more stringent requirements apply.
- B. Sealant Installation Standard: Comply with recommendations in ASTM C1193 for use of joint sealants as applicable to materials, applications, and conditions indicated.
- C. Install sealant backings of type indicated to support sealants during application and at position required to produce cross-sectional shapes and depths of installed sealants relative to joint widths that allow optimum sealant movement capability.
 - 1. Do not leave gaps between ends of sealant backings.
 - 2. Do not stretch, twist, puncture, or tear sealant backings.
 - 3. Remove absorbent sealant backings that have become wet before sealant application, and replace them with dry materials.
- D. Install bond-breaker tape behind sealants where sealant backings are not used between sealants and backs of joints.
- E. Install sealants using proven techniques that comply with the following and at the same time backings are installed:
 - 1. Place sealants so they directly contact and fully wet joint substrates.
 - 2. Completely fill recesses in each joint configuration.
 - 3. Produce uniform, cross-sectional shapes and depths relative to joint widths that allow optimum sealant movement capability.
- F. Tooling of Nonsag Sealants: Immediately after sealant application and before skinning or curing begins, tool sealants according to requirements specified in subparagraphs below to form smooth, uniform beads of configuration indicated; to eliminate air pockets; and to ensure contact and adhesion of sealant with sides of joint.
 - 1. Remove excess sealant from surfaces adjacent to joints.
 - 2. Use tooling agents that are approved in writing by sealant manufacturer and that do not discolor sealants or adjacent surfaces.
 - 3. Provide concave joint profile in accordance with Figure 8A in ASTM C1193 unless otherwise indicated.

3.4 CLEANING

- A. Clean off excess sealant or sealant smears adjacent to joints as the Work progresses by methods and with cleaning materials approved in writing by manufacturers of joint sealants and of products in which joints occur.

3.5 PROTECTION

- A. Protect joint sealants during and after curing period from contact with contaminating substances and from damage resulting from construction operations or other causes so sealants are without deterioration or damage at time of Substantial Completion. If, despite such protection, damage

or deterioration occurs, cut out, remove, and repair damaged or deteriorated joint sealants immediately so installations with repaired areas are indistinguishable from original work.

END OF SECTION 079200

SECTION 099114 - EXTERIOR PAINTING (MPI STANDARDS)

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Surface preparation and application of paint systems on
 - a. Wood.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. MPI Gloss Level 1: Not more than five units at 60 degrees and 10 units at 85 degrees, according to ASTM D523.
- B. MPI Gloss Level 3: 10 to 25 units at 60 degrees and 10 to 35 units at 85 degrees, according to ASTM D523.
- C. MPI Gloss Level 4: 20 to 35 units at 60 degrees and not less than 35 units at 85 degrees, according to ASTM D523.
- D. MPI Gloss Level 5: 35 to 70 units at 60 degrees, according to ASTM D523.
- E. MPI Gloss Level 6: 70 to 85 units at 60 degrees, according to ASTM D523.
- F. MPI Gloss Level 7: More than 85 units at 60 degrees, according to ASTM D523.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include preparation requirements and application instructions.
- B. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of topcoat product.
- C. Samples for Verification: For each type of paint system and each color and gloss of topcoat.
 - 1. Submit Samples on rigid backing, 8 inches square.
 - 2. Apply coats on Samples in steps to show each coat required for system.

1.5 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Paint: 5 percent, but not less than 1 gal. of each material and color applied.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store materials not in use in tightly covered containers in well-ventilated areas with ambient temperatures continuously maintained at not less than 45 deg F.
 - 1. Maintain containers in clean condition, free of foreign materials and residue.
 - 2. Remove rags and waste from storage areas daily.

1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Apply paints only when temperature of surfaces to be painted and ambient air temperatures are between 50 and 95 deg F.
- B. Do not apply paints in snow, rain, fog, or mist; when relative humidity exceeds 85 percent; at temperatures less than 5 deg F above the dew point; or to damp or wet surfaces.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 1. Benjamin Moore & Co.
 - 2. PPG Architectural.
 - 3. Sherwin Williams.
- B. **Products:** Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to products listed in the Exterior Painting Schedule for the paint category indicated.
- C. **Source Limitations:** Obtain paint from single source from single manufacturer.

2.2 PAINT PRODUCTS

- A. **MPI Standards:** Provide products complying with MPI standards indicated and listed in its "MPI Approved Products List."
- B. **Material Compatibility:**

1. Provide materials for use within each paint system that are compatible with one another and substrates indicated, under conditions of service and application as demonstrated by manufacturer, based on testing and field experience.
 2. For each coat in a paint system, provide products recommended in writing by topcoat manufacturers for use in paint system and on substrate indicated.
- C. Colors: to match sample of salvaged trim removed from building .

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Applicator present, for compliance with requirements for maximum moisture content and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Maximum Moisture Content of Substrates: When measured with an electronic moisture meter as follows:
 1. Wood: 15 percent.
- C. Verify suitability of substrates, including surface conditions and compatibility, with existing finishes and primers.
- D. Proceed with coating application only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
 1. Application of coating indicates acceptance of surfaces and conditions.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations in "MPI Manual" applicable to substrates and paint systems indicated.
- B. Clean substrates of substances that could impair bond of paints, including dust, dirt, oil, grease, and incompatible paints and encapsulants.
- C. Wood Substrates:
 1. Scrape and clean knots. Before applying primer, apply coat of knot sealer recommended in writing by topcoat manufacturer for exterior use in paint system indicated.
 2. Sand surfaces that will be exposed to view, and remove sanding dust.
 3. Prime edges, ends, faces, undersides, and backsides of wood.
 4. After priming, fill holes and imperfections in the finish surfaces with putty or plastic wood filler. Sand smooth when dried.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Apply paints in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations in "MPI Manual."

1. Use applicators and techniques suited for paint and substrate indicated.
2. Before final installation, paint surfaces behind permanently fixed items with prime coat only.

- B. If undercoats or other conditions show through topcoat, apply additional coats until cured film has a uniform paint finish, color, and appearance.
- C. Apply paints to produce surface films without cloudiness, spotting, holidays, laps, brush marks, roller tracking, runs, sags, ropiness, or other surface imperfections. Cut in sharp lines and color breaks.

3.4 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. At end of each workday, remove rubbish, empty cans, rags, and other discarded materials from Project site.
1. Do not clean equipment with free-draining water and prevent solvents, thinners, cleaners, and other contaminants from entering into waterways, sanitary and storm drain systems, and ground.
 2. Dispose of contaminants in accordance with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
 3. Allow empty paint cans to dry before disposal.
 4. Collect waste paint by type and deliver to recycling or collection facility.
- B. After completing paint application, clean spattered surfaces. Remove spattered paints by washing, scraping, or other methods. Do not scratch or damage adjacent finished surfaces.
- C. Protect work of other trades against damage from paint application. Correct damage to work of other trades by cleaning, repairing, replacing, and refinishing, as approved by Architect, and leave in an undamaged condition.
- D. At completion of construction activities of other trades, touch up and restore damaged or defaced painted surfaces.

3.5 EXTERIOR PAINTING SCHEDULE

- A. Wood Substrates: Wood trim and Architectural woodwork .
1. Latex System MPI EXT 6.3A:
 - a. Prime Coat: Primer, alkyd for exterior wood , MPI #5.
 - 1) Sherwin Williams; Exterior Oil-Based Wood Primer.
 - b. Intermediate Coat: Latex, exterior, matching topcoat.
 - c. Low-Sheen Topcoat: Latex, exterior, low sheen (MPI Gloss Level 3-4) , MPI #15.
 - 1) Sherwin Williams; Exterior Latex Satin .

END OF SECTION 099114